



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ :	A1	(11) International Publication Number:	WO 99/18096
C07D 401/02, 401/04, 401/06, 401/12, 401/14, A61K 31/415, 31/44, 31/445		(43) International Publication Date:	15 April 1999 (15.04.99)
(21) International Application Number:	PCT/US98/20525		
(22) International Filing Date:	1 October 1998 (01.10.98)		
(30) Priority Data:	60/060,871 2 October 1997 (02.10.97) US 9807948.6 14 April 1998 (14.04.98) GB		
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):	MERCK & CO., INC. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).		
(72) Inventors; and			
(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):	DESOLMS, S., Jane [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). SHAW, Anthony, W. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). LUMMA, William, C., Jr. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). ŠISKO, John, T. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). TUCKER, Thomas, J. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).		
(74) Common Representative:	MERCK & CO., INC.; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).		
(81) Designated States:	AL, AM, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CU, CZ, EE, GD, GE, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KG, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, US, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).		
(54) Title:	INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE		
(57) Abstract	<p>The present invention is directed to compounds which inhibit prenyl-protein transferase (FTase) and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras. The invention is further directed to chemotherapeutic compositions containing the compounds of this invention and methods for inhibiting prenyl-protein transferase and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras.</p>		

(57) Abstract

The present invention is directed to compounds which inhibit prenyl-protein transferase (FTase) and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras. The invention is further directed to chemotherapeutic compositions containing the compounds of this invention and methods for inhibiting prenyl-protein transferase and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	MW	Malawi	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia			SG	Singapore		

TITLE OF THE INVENTION
INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

- 5 The Ras proteins (Ha-Ras, Ki4a-Ras, Ki4b-Ras and N-Ras) are part of a signalling pathway that links cell surface growth factor receptors to nuclear signals initiating cellular proliferation. Biological and biochemical studies of Ras action indicate that Ras functions like a G-regulatory protein. In the inactive state, Ras is bound to GDP.
- 10 Upon growth factor receptor activation Ras is induced to exchange GDP for GTP and undergoes a conformational change. The GTP-bound form of Ras propagates the growth stimulatory signal until the signal is terminated by the intrinsic GTPase activity of Ras, which returns the protein to its inactive GDP bound form (D.R. Lowy and
- 15 D.M. Willumsen, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 62:851-891 (1993)). Mutated *ras* genes (Ha-*ras*, Ki4a-*ras*, Ki4b-*ras* and N-*ras*) are found in many human cancers, including colorectal carcinoma, exocrine pancreatic carcinoma, and myeloid leukemias. The protein products of these genes are defective in their GTPase activity and constitutively
- 20 transmit a growth stimulatory signal.

Ras must be localized to the plasma membrane for both normal and oncogenic functions. At least 3 post-translational modifications are involved with Ras membrane localization, and all 3 modifications occur at the C-terminus of Ras. The Ras C-terminus

25 contains a sequence motif termed a "CAAX" or "Cys-Aaa¹-Aaa²-Xaa" box (Cys is cysteine, Aaa is an aliphatic amino acid, the Xaa is any amino acid) (Willumsen *et al.*, *Nature* 310:583-586 (1984)). Depending on the specific sequence, this motif serves as a signal sequence for the enzymes farnesyl-protein transferase or geranylgeranyl-protein

30 transferase, which catalyze the alkylation of the cysteine residue of the CAAX motif with a C₁₅ or C₂₀ isoprenoid, respectively. (S. Clarke., *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 61:355-386 (1992); W.R. Schafer and J. Rine, *Ann. Rev. Genetics* 30:209-237 (1992)). The Ras protein is one of several proteins that are known to undergo post-translational farnesylation.

tion. Other farnesylated proteins include the Ras-related GTP-binding proteins such as Rho, fungal mating factors, the nuclear lamins, and the gamma subunit of transducin. James, et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 269, 14182 (1994) have identified a peroxisome associated protein Pxf which is
5 also farnesylated. James, et al., have also suggested that there are farnesylated proteins of unknown structure and function in addition to those listed above.

Inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase has been shown to block the growth of Ras-transformed cells in soft agar and to modify
10 other aspects of their transformed phenotype. It has also been demonstrated that certain inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase selectively block the processing of the Ras oncprotein intracellularly (N.E. Kohl et al., *Science*, 260:1934-1937 (1993) and G.L. James et al., *Science*, 260:1937-1942 (1993). Recently, it has been shown that an inhibitor of
15 farnesyl-protein transferase blocks the growth of *ras*-dependent tumors in nude mice (N.E. Kohl et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci U.S.A.*, 91:9141-9145 (1994) and induces regression of mammary and salivary carcinomas in *ras* transgenic mice (N.E. Kohl et al., *Nature Medicine*, 1:792-797 (1995).

20 Indirect inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase *in vivo* has been demonstrated with lovastatin (Merck & Co., Rahway, NJ) and compactin (Hancock et al., *ibid*; Casey et al., *ibid*; Schafer et al., *Science* 245:379 (1989)). These drugs inhibit HMG-CoA reductase, the rate limiting enzyme for the production of polyisoprenoids including
25 farnesyl pyrophosphate. Farnesyl-protein transferase utilizes farnesyl pyrophosphate to covalently modify the Cys thiol group of the Ras CAAX box with a farnesyl group (Reiss et al., *Cell*, 62:81-88 (1990); Schaber et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 265:14701-14704 (1990); Schafer et al., *Science*, 249:1133-1139 (1990); Manne et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA*, 87:7541-7545 (1990)). Inhibition of farnesyl pyrophosphate biosynthesis by inhibiting HMG-CoA reductase blocks Ras membrane localization in cultured cells. However, direct inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase would be more specific and attended by fewer side effects than would occur with the required dose of a general inhibitor

of isoprene biosynthesis.

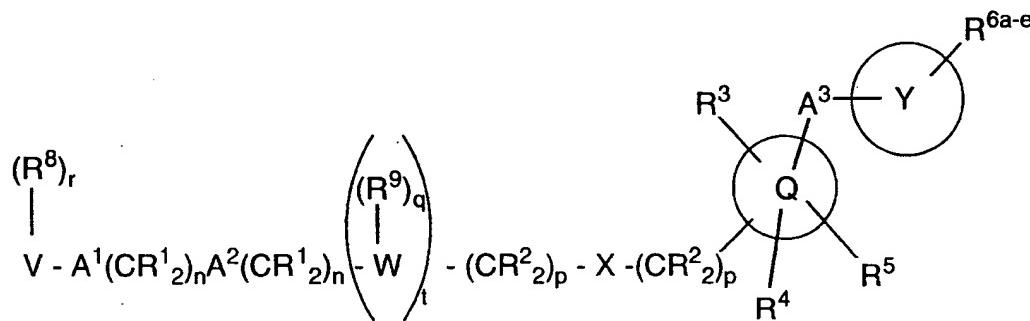
Inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase (FPTase) have been described in four general classes (S. Graham, *Expert Opinion Ther. Patents*, (1995) 5:1269-1285). The first are analogs of farnesyl diphosphate (FPP), while a second class of inhibitors is related to the protein substrates (e.g., Ras) for the enzyme. Bisubstrate inhibitors and inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase that are non-competitive with the substrates have also been described. The peptide derived inhibitors that have been described are generally cysteine containing molecules that are related to the CAAX motif that is the signal for protein prenylation. (Schaber *et al.*, *ibid*; Reiss *et. al.*, *ibid*; Reiss *et al.*, *PNAS*, 88:732-736 (1991)). Such inhibitors may inhibit protein prenylation while serving as alternate substrates for the farnesyl-protein transferase enzyme, or may be purely competitive inhibitors (U.S. Patent 5,141,851, University 10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55
60
65
70
75
80
85
90
95
100
105
110
115
120
125
130
135
140
145
150
155
160
165
170
175
180
185
190
195
200
205
210
215
220
225
230
235
240
245
250
255
260
265
270
275
280
285
290
295
300
305
310
315
320
325
330
335
340
345
350
355
360
365
370
375
380
385
390
395
400
405
410
415
420
425
430
435
440
445
450
455
460
465
470
475
480
485
490
495
500
505
510
515
520
525
530
535
540
545
550
555
560
565
570
575
580
585
590
595
600
605
610
615
620
625
630
635
640
645
650
655
660
665
670
675
680
685
690
695
700
705
710
715
720
725
730
735
740
745
750
755
760
765
770
775
780
785
790
795
800
805
810
815
820
825
830
835
840
845
850
855
860
865
870
875
880
885
890
895
900
905
910
915
920
925
930
935
940
945
950
955
960
965
970
975
980
985
990
995
1000
1005
1010
1015
1020
1025
1030
1035
1040
1045
1050
1055
1060
1065
1070
1075
1080
1085
1090
1095
1100
1105
1110
1115
1120
1125
1130
1135
1140
1145
1150
1155
1160
1165
1170
1175
1180
1185
1190
1195
1200
1205
1210
1215
1220
1225
1230
1235
1240
1245
1250
1255
1260
1265
1270
1275
1280
1285
1290
1295
1300
1305
1310
1315
1320
1325
1330
1335
1340
1345
1350
1355
1360
1365
1370
1375
1380
1385
1390
1395
1400
1405
1410
1415
1420
1425
1430
1435
1440
1445
1450
1455
1460
1465
1470
1475
1480
1485
1490
1495
1500
1505
1510
1515
1520
1525
1530
1535
1540
1545
1550
1555
1560
1565
1570
1575
1580
1585
1590
1595
1600
1605
1610
1615
1620
1625
1630
1635
1640
1645
1650
1655
1660
1665
1670
1675
1680
1685
1690
1695
1700
1705
1710
1715
1720
1725
1730
1735
1740
1745
1750
1755
1760
1765
1770
1775
1780
1785
1790
1795
1800
1805
1810
1815
1820
1825
1830
1835
1840
1845
1850
1855
1860
1865
1870
1875
1880
1885
1890
1895
1900
1905
1910
1915
1920
1925
1930
1935
1940
1945
1950
1955
1960
1965
1970
1975
1980
1985
1990
1995
2000
2005
2010
2015
2020
2025
2030
2035
2040
2045
2050
2055
2060
2065
2070
2075
2080
2085
2090
2095
2100
2105
2110
2115
2120
2125
2130
2135
2140
2145
2150
2155
2160
2165
2170
2175
2180
2185
2190
2195
2200
2205
2210
2215
2220
2225
2230
2235
2240
2245
2250
2255
2260
2265
2270
2275
2280
2285
2290
2295
2300
2305
2310
2315
2320
2325
2330
2335
2340
2345
2350
2355
2360
2365
2370
2375
2380
2385
2390
2395
2400
2405
2410
2415
2420
2425
2430
2435
2440
2445
2450
2455
2460
2465
2470
2475
2480
2485
2490
2495
2500
2505
2510
2515
2520
2525
2530
2535
2540
2545
2550
2555
2560
2565
2570
2575
2580
2585
2590
2595
2600
2605
2610
2615
2620
2625
2630
2635
2640
2645
2650
2655
2660
2665
2670
2675
2680
2685
2690
2695
2700
2705
2710
2715
2720
2725
2730
2735
2740
2745
2750
2755
2760
2765
2770
2775
2780
2785
2790
2795
2800
2805
2810
2815
2820
2825
2830
2835
2840
2845
2850
2855
2860
2865
2870
2875
2880
2885
2890
2895
2900
2905
2910
2915
2920
2925
2930
2935
2940
2945
2950
2955
2960
2965
2970
2975
2980
2985
2990
2995
3000
3005
3010
3015
3020
3025
3030
3035
3040
3045
3050
3055
3060
3065
3070
3075
3080
3085
3090
3095
3100
3105
3110
3115
3120
3125
3130
3135
3140
3145
3150
3155
3160
3165
3170
3175
3180
3185
3190
3195
3200
3205
3210
3215
3220
3225
3230
3235
3240
3245
3250
3255
3260
3265
3270
3275
3280
3285
3290
3295
3300
3305
3310
3315
3320
3325
3330
3335
3340
3345
3350
3355
3360
3365
3370
3375
3380
3385
3390
3395
3400
3405
3410
3415
3420
3425
3430
3435
3440
3445
3450
3455
3460
3465
3470
3475
3480
3485
3490
3495
3500
3505
3510
3515
3520
3525
3530
3535
3540
3545
3550
3555
3560
3565
3570
3575
3580
3585
3590
3595
3600
3605
3610
3615
3620
3625
3630
3635
3640
3645
3650
3655
3660
3665
3670
3675
3680
3685
3690
3695
3700
3705
3710
3715
3720
3725
3730
3735
3740
3745
3750
3755
3760
3765
3770
3775
3780
3785
3790
3795
3800
3805
3810
3815
3820
3825
3830
3835
3840
3845
3850
3855
3860
3865
3870
3875
3880
3885
3890
3895
3900
3905
3910
3915
3920
3925
3930
3935
3940
3945
3950
3955
3960
3965
3970
3975
3980
3985
3990
3995
4000
4005
4010
4015
4020
4025
4030
4035
4040
4045
4050
4055
4060
4065
4070
4075
4080
4085
4090
4095
4100
4105
4110
4115
4120
4125
4130
4135
4140
4145
4150
4155
4160
4165
4170
4175
4180
4185
4190
4195
4200
4205
4210
4215
4220
4225
4230
4235
4240
4245
4250
4255
4260
4265
4270
4275
4280
4285
4290
4295
4300
4305
4310
4315
4320
4325
4330
4335
4340
4345
4350
4355
4360
4365
4370
4375
4380
4385
4390
4395
4400
4405
4410
4415
4420
4425
4430
4435
4440
4445
4450
4455
4460
4465
4470
4475
4480
4485
4490
4495
4500
4505
4510
4515
4520
4525
4530
4535
4540
4545
4550
4555
4560
4565
4570
4575
4580
4585
4590
4595
4600
4605
4610
4615
4620
4625
4630
4635
4640
4645
4650
4655
4660
4665
4670
4675
4680
4685
4690
4695
4700
4705
4710
4715
4720
4725
4730
4735
4740
4745
4750
4755
4760
4765
4770
4775
4780
4785
4790
4795
4800
4805
4810
4815
4820
4825
4830
4835
4840
4845
4850
4855
4860
4865
4870
4875
4880
4885
4890
4895
4900
4905
4910
4915
4920
4925
4930
4935
4940
4945
4950
4955
4960
4965
4970
4975
4980
4985
4990
4995
5000
5005
5010
5015
5020
5025
5030
5035
5040
5045
5050
5055
5060
5065
5070
5075
5080
5085
5090
5095
5100
5105
5110
5115
5120
5125
5130
5135
5140
5145
5150
5155
5160
5165
5170
5175
5180
5185
5190
5195
5200
5205
5210
5215
5220
5225
5230
5235
5240
5245
5250
5255
5260
5265
5270
5275
5280
5285
5290
5295
5300
5305
5310
5315
5320
5325
5330
5335
5340
5345
5350
5355
5360
5365
5370
5375
5380
5385
5390
5395
5400
5405
5410
5415
5420
5425
5430
5435
5440
5445
5450
5455
5460
5465
5470
5475
5480
5485
5490
5495
5500
5505
5510
5515
5520
5525
5530
5535
5540
5545
5550
5555
5560
5565
5570
5575
5580
5585
5590
5595
5600
5605
5610
5615
5620
5625
5630
5635
5640
5645
5650
5655
5660
5665
5670
5675
5680
5685
5690
5695
5700
5705
5710
5715
5720
5725
5730
5735
5740
5745
5750
5755
5760
5765
5770
5775
5780
5785
5790
5795
5800
5805
5810
5815
5820
5825
5830
5835
5840
5845
5850
5855
5860
5865
5870
5875
5880
5885
5890
5895
5900
5905
5910
5915
5920
5925
5930
5935
5940
5945
5950
5955
5960
5965
5970
5975
5980
5985
5990
5995
6000
6005
6010
6015
6020
6025
6030
6035
6040
6045
6050
6055
6060
6065
6070
6075
6080
6085
6090
6095
6100
6105
6110
6115
6120
6125
6130
6135
6140
6145
6150
6155
6160
6165
6170
6175
6180
6185
6190
6195
6200
6205
6210
6215
6220
6225
6230
6235
6240
6245
6250
6255
6260
6265
6270
6275
6280
6285
6290
6295
6300
6305
6310
6315
6320
6325
6330
6335
6340
6345
6350
6355
6360
6365
6370
6375
6380
6385
6390
6395
6400
6405
6410
6415
6420
6425
6430
6435
6440
6445
6450
6455
6460
6465
6470
6475
6480
6485
6490
6495
6500
6505
6510
6515
6520
6525
6530
6535
6540
6545
6550
6555
6560
6565
6570
6575
6580
6585
6590
6595
6600
6605
6610
6615
6620
6625
6630
6635
6640
6645
6650
6655
6660
6665
6670
6675
6680
6685
6690
6695
6700
6705
6710
6715
6720
6725
6730
6735
6740
6745
6750
6755
6760
6765
6770
6775
6780
6785
6790
6795
6800
6805
6810
6815
6820
6825
6830
6835
6840
6845
6850
6855
6860
6865
6870
6875
6880
6885
6890
6895
6900
6905
6910
6915
6920
6925
6930
6935
6940
6945
6950
6955
6960
6965
6970
6975
6980
6985
6990
6995
7000
7005
7010
7015
7020
7025
7030
7035
7040
7045
7050
7055
7060
7065
7070
7075
7080
7085
7090
7095
7100
7105
7110
7115
7120
7125
7130
7135
7140
7145
7150
7155
7160
7165
7170
7175
7180
7185
7190
7195
7200
7205
7210
7215
7220
7225
7230
7235
7240
7245
7250
7255
7260
7265
7270
7275
7280
7285
7290
7295
7300
7305
7310
7315
7320
7325
7330
7335
7340
7345
7350
7355
7360
7365
7370
7375
7380
7385
7390
7395
7400
7405
7410
7415
7420
7425
7430
7435
7440
7445
7450
7455
7460
7465
7470
7475
7480
7485
7490
7495
7500
7505
7510
7515
7520
7525
7530
7535
7540
7545
7550
7555
7560
7565
7570
7575
7580
7585
7590
7595
7600
7605
7610
7615
7620
7625
7630
7635
7640
7645
7650
7655
7660
7665
7670
7675
7680
7685
7690
7695
7700
7705
7710
7715
7720
7725
7730
7735
7740
7745
7750
7755
7760
7765
7770
7775
7780
7785
7790
7795
7800
7805
7810
7815
7820
7825
7830
7835
7840
7845
7850
7855
7860
7865
7870
7875
7880
7885
7890
7895
7900
7905
7910
7915
7920
7925
7930
7935
7940
7945
7950
7955
7960
7965
7970
7975
7980
7985
7990
7995
8000
8005
8010
8015
8020
8025
8030
8035
8040
8045
8050
8055
8060
8065
8070
8075
8080
8085
8090
8095
8100
8105
8110
8115
8120
8125
8130
8135
8140
8145
8150
8155
8160
8165
8170
8175
8180
8185
8190
8195
8200
8205
8210
8215
8220
8225
8230
8235
8240
8245
8250
8255
8260
8265
8270
8275
8280
8285
8290
8295
8300
8305
8310
8315
8320
8325
8330
8335
8340
8345
8350
8355
8360
8365
8370
8375
8380
8385
8390
8395
8400
8405
8410
8415
8420
8425
8430
8435
8440
8445
8450
8455
8460
8465
8470
8475
8480
8485
8490
8495
8500
8505
8510
8515
8520
8525
8530
8535
8540
8545
8550
8555
8560
8565
8570
8575
8580
8585
8590
8595
8600
8605
8610
8615
8620
8625
8630
8635
8640
8645
8650
8655
8660
8665
8670
8675
8680
8685
8690
8695
8700
8705
8710
8715
8720
8725
8730
8735
8740
8745
8750
8755
8760
8765
8770
8775
8780
8785
8790
8795
8800
8805
8810
8815
8820
8825
8830
8835
8840
8845
8850
8855
8860
8865
8870
8875
8880
8885
8890
8895
8900
8905
8910
8915
8920
8925
8930
8935
8940
8945
8950
8955
8960
8965
8970
8975
8980
8985
8990
8995
9000
9005
9010
9015
9020
9025
9030
9035
9040
9045
9050
9055
9060
9065
9070
9075
9080
9085
9090
9095
9100
9105
9110
9115
9120
9125
9130
9135
9140
9145
9150
9155
9160
9165
9170
9175
9180
9185
9190
9195
9200
9205
9210
9215
9220
9225
9230
9235
9240
9245
9250
9255
9260
9265
9270
9275
9280
9285
9290
9295
9300
9305
9310
9315
9320<br

low molecular weight compounds that will inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase and thus, the post-translational prenylation of proteins. It is a further object of this invention to develop chemotherapeutic compositions containing the compounds of this invention and methods 5 for producing the compounds of this invention.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention comprises bicyclic compounds which inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase. Further contained in 10 this invention are chemotherapeutic compositions containing these prenyl transferase inhibitors and methods for their production.

The compounds of this invention are illustrated by the formula A:

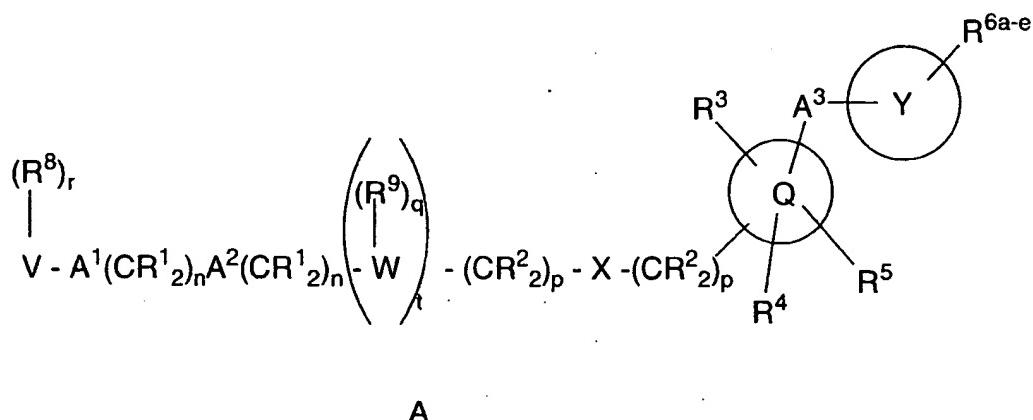


15

A

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The compounds of this invention are useful in the inhibition of prenyl-protein transferases and the prenylation of the oncogene 20 protein Ras. In a first embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula A:



wherein:

- 5 Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine, piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;
- 10 Y is a 5, 6 or 7 membered carbocyclic ring wherein from 0 to 3 carbon atoms are replaced by a heteroatom selected from N, S and O, and wherein Y is attached to A³ through a carbon atom;
- 15 R¹ and R² are independently selected from:
- 20 a) hydrogen,
 b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, R¹¹C(O)O-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
25 c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected

from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

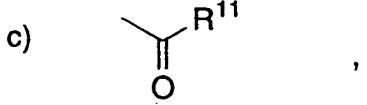
- R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
 - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹C(O)O-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,
 - c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 - d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

- R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
 - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹C(O)O-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,
 - c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,

d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-; or

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

R⁷ is selected from: H; C₁-4 alkyl, C₃-6 cycloalkyl, heterocycle, aryl, aroyl, heteroaroyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, unsubstituted or substituted with:

- a) C₁-4 alkoxy,
- b) aryl or heterocycle,
- c) 
- d) —SO₂R¹¹,
- e) N(R¹⁰)₂ or
- f) C₁-4 perfluoroalkyl;

R⁸ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and

- 5 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, cyanophenyl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NH-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹⁰OC(O)NH-;

R⁹ is independently selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
b) alkenyl, alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- 15

- 15 15 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

20 R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

25 R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

30 R¹³ is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, cyano, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl and C₁-C₆ acyl;

A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-,

-C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-,
 -S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂- or S(O)_m;

- A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -C≡C-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, S(O)_m,
 5 -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂NR¹⁰C(O)- ,
 -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-, -NR¹⁰C(O)CH₂-, -CH₂O-, -CH₂N(R¹⁰)-,
 -CH₂S(O)_m-, -OCH₂-, -N(R¹⁰)CH₂- and -S(O)_mCH₂-;

V is selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
 b) heterocycle,
 c) aryl,
 d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are
 replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
 15 e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl,

provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen
 if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

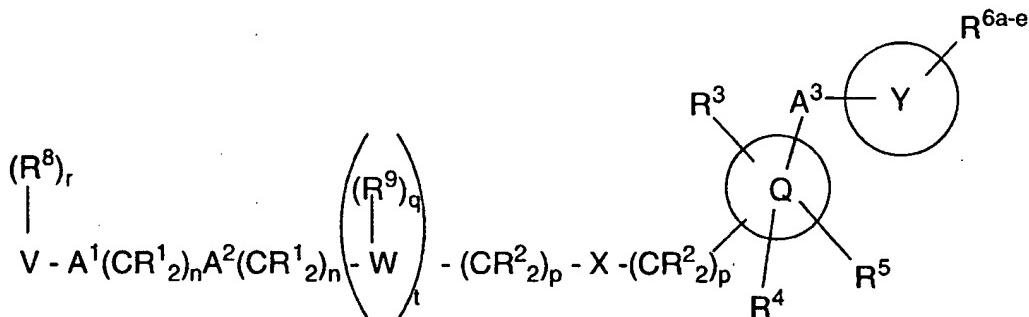
W is a heterocycle;

- 20 X is a bond, -CH=CH-, O, -C(=O)-, -C(O)NR⁷-, -NR⁷C(O)-,
 -C(O)O-, -OC(O)-, -C(O)NR⁷C(O)-, -NR⁷-,
 -S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂- or -S(=O)_m;

- 25 m is 0, 1 or 2;
 n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 p is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 q is 0, 1, 2 or 3;
 r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen; and
 30 t is 0 or 1;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In a preferred embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula A:



A

5

wherein:

- Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, $-C(=NR^{13})-$ or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine, piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;
- Y is a 5, 6 or 7 membered carbocyclic ring wherein from 0 to 3 carbon atoms are replaced by a heteroatom selected from N, S and O, and wherein Y is attached to A³ through a carbon atom;
- R¹ and R² are independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
 - b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,

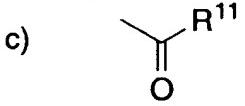
C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-,
R¹¹C(O)O-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂,
R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the
5 substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected
from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
10 R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
15 substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-,
R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹C(O)O-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂,
or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
20 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
25 R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- 30 a) hydrogen,
b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-,

- $R^{11}S(O)_m-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}-$, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)-$, $R^{11}C(O)O-$,
 $R^{10}N-C(NR^{10})-$, CN, NO₂, $R^{10}C(O)-$, $(R^{10})_2NS(O)2-$,
 $R^{11}S(O)_mNR^{10}-$, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or $R^{11}OC(O)NR^{10}-$,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
 substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
 substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
 $R^{12}O-$, $R^{11}S(O)_m-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}-$, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)-$,
 $(R^{10})_2NS(O)2-$, $R^{11}S(O)_mNR^{10}-$, $R^{10}N-C(NR^{10})-$,
 CN, $R^{10}C(O)-$, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and $R^{11}OC(O)-NR^{10}-$; or
- any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are
 combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-,
 -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;
- R⁷ is selected from: H; C₁-4 alkyl, C₃-6 cycloalkyl, heterocycle, aryl,
 aroyl, heteroaroyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, unsubstituted or
 substituted with:
- a) C₁-4 alkoxy,
- b) aryl or heterocycle,
- c) 
- d) —SO₂R¹¹
- e) N(R¹⁰)₂ or
- f) C₁-4 perfluoroalkyl;
- R⁸ is independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
 perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-,

R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and

- 5 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, cyanophenyl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NH-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹⁰OC(O)NH-;

10

R⁹ is independently selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
b) alkenyl, alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

20

R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

25 R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

30 R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

R¹³ is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, cyano, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl and C₁-C₆ acyl;

5 A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-,
-C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-,
-S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂-, or S(O)_m;

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, S(O)_m, -C(O)NR¹⁰-,
-NR¹⁰C(O)-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂NR¹⁰C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-,
10 -NR¹⁰C(O)CH₂-, -CH₂O-, -CH₂N(R¹⁰)-, CH₂S(O)_m-, -OCH₂-,
-N(R¹⁰)CH₂- and -S(O)_mCH₂-;

V is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
b) heterocycle,
c) aryl,
d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are
replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl,
20 provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen
if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

W is a heterocycle;

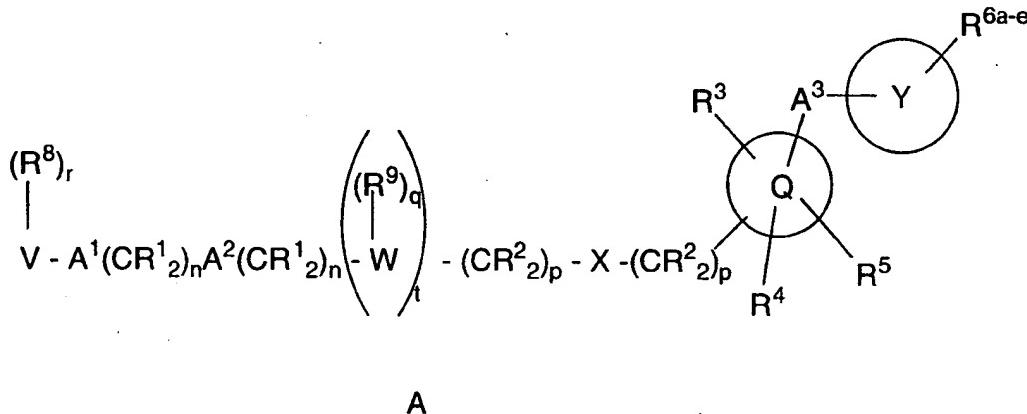
25 X is a bond, -CH=CH-, O, -C(=O)-, -C(O)NR⁷-, -NR⁷C(O)-,
-C(O)O-, -OC(O)-, -C(O)NR⁷C(O)-, -NR⁷-,
-S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂- or -S(=O)_m-;

- m is 0, 1 or 2;
30 n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
p is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
q is 0, 1, 2 or 3;
r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen; and

t is 0 or 1;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Another preferred embodiment of the compounds of this
5 invention is illustrated by the following formula A:



wherein:

Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine, piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;

Y is selected from: phenyl, cyclohexyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, furyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, tetrahydrofuryl, piperdinyl, thiazolidinyl, piperazinyl and tetrahydrothienyl;

R¹ is independently selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

25

R² is independently selected from:

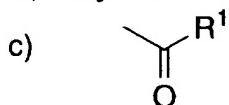
- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
- 5 c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O- and -N(R¹⁰)₂;

10 R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- 15 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl;
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
- 20 e) R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;
- 25 f) R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
- 30 c) R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

- (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN,
NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl;
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
(R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-; or
any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are
combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-,
-CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;
- R⁷ is selected from: H; C₁-4 alkyl, C₃-6 cycloalkyl, heterocycle, aryl,
aryloyl, heteroaroyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, unsubstituted or
substituted with:
a) C₁-4 alkoxy,
b) aryl or heterocycle,
c) 
d) -SO₂R¹¹
e) N(R¹⁰)₂ or
f) C₁-4 perfluoroalkyl;
- R⁸ is independently selected from:
a) hydrogen,
b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle,
C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆
perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-,

(R^{10})₂NC(O)-, CN, NO₂, (R^{10})₂N-C(NR 10)-, R^{10} C(O)-,
 $(R^{10})_2NS(O)_2-$, $R^{11}S(O)_mNR^{10}-$, -N(R^{10})₂, or
 $R^{11}OC(O)NR^{10}-$, and

- 5 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
 $R^{10}O-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}-$, (R^{10})₂N-C(NR 10)-, $R^{10}C(O)-$,
-N(R^{10})₂, or $R^{11}OC(O)NR^{10}-$;

R^9 is selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
b) C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F,
Cl, $R^{10}O-$, $R^{11}S(O)_m-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}-$, (R^{10})₂NC(O)-,
CN, NO₂, (R^{10})₂N-C(NR 10)-, $R^{10}C(O)-$, -N(R^{10})₂, or
 $R^{11}OC(O)NR^{10}-$, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by C₁-C₆
perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, $R^{10}O-$, $R^{11}S(O)_m-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}-$,
(R^{10})₂NC(O)-, CN, (R^{10})₂N-C(NR 10)-, $R^{10}C(O)-$,
-N(R^{10})₂, or $R^{11}OC(O)NR^{10}-$;

15 R^{10} is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl,
2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

20 R^{11} is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

25 R^{12} is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆
aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl,
C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl,
heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

30 A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-,
-C(O)-, -C(O)NR $^{10}-$, O, -N(R^{10})-, or S(O)_m;

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R^{10})-, S(O)_m, -C(O)NR $^{10}-$,

-NR¹⁰C(O)-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂NR¹⁰C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-,
 -NR¹⁰C(O)CH₂-, -CH₂O-, -CH₂N(R¹⁰)-, -CH₂S(O)_m-, -OCH₂-,
 -N(R¹⁰)CH₂- and -S(O)_mCH₂-;

5 V is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thienyl,
- c) aryl,
- d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
- e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl, and

15 provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

W is a heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, 20 quinolinyl, triazolyl or isoquinolinyl;

X is a bond, O, -C(=O)-, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR⁷-, -NR⁷C(O)-, -NR⁷-, -S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂- or -S(=O)_m-;

25 m is 0, 1 or 2;

n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

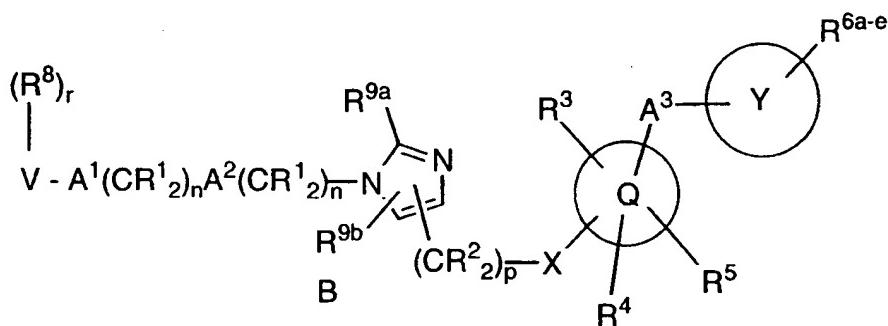
q is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen; and

30 t is 0 or 1;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

A preferred embodiment of the compounds of this invention are illustrated by the formula B:



wherein:

- Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, $-C(=NR^{13})-$ or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine, piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;
- Y is selected from: phenyl, cyclohexyl and pyridyl;
- 15 R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;
- R² is independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
 - 20 b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
 - c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O- and -N(R¹⁰)₂;
- 25 R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
5 R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
10 substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
15 R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
20 C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
25 substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN,
30 R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-; or

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂- , -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

5 R⁸ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl and halogen;

20 R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

25 R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

30 R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂O-, -OCH₂- or S(O)_m;

5 V is selected from:

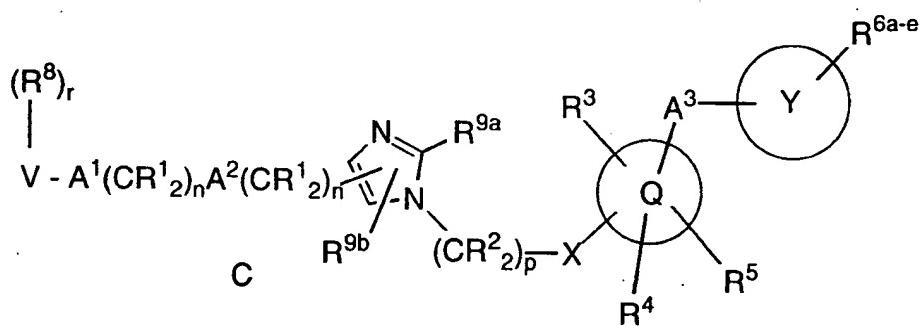
- a) hydrogen,
 - b) heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thienyl,
 - c) aryl,
 - d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
 - e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl, and
- 10 15 provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-;

- 20 m is 0, 1 or 2;
n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen;

25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Another preferred embodiment of the compounds of this invention are illustrated by the formula C:



wherein:

- Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, dикатопиперазине, piperidine, piperidinone, dикатопиперидине or triketopiperidine;
- Y is selected from: phenyl, cyclohexyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, furyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, tetrahydrofuryl, piperdinyl, thiazolidinyl, piperazinyl and tetrahydrothiophenyl;
- R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;
- R² is independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
 - b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
 - c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O- and -N(R¹⁰)₂;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, CN(R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹S(O)₂NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,

$R^{12}O$ -, $R^{11}S(O)m$ -, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}$ -, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)$ -,
 $R^{11}S(O)_2NR^{10}$ -, $(R^{10})_2NS(O)_2$ -, $R^{10}_2N-C(NR^{10})$ -, CN,
 $R^{10}C(O)$ -, N_3 , $-N(R^{10})_2$, and $R^{11}OC(O)-NR^{10}$; or

5 any two of R^{6a} , R^{6b} , R^{6c} , R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from $-CH=CH-CH=CH-$, $-CH=CH-CH_2-$, $-(CH_2)_4$ - and $-(CH_2)_3$;

R^8 is independently selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O⁻, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹S(O)₂NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O⁻, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹S(O)₂NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

15 20

R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl and halogen;

25 R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

30 R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,

2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;

5

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;

V is selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thienyl,
- 15 c) aryl,
- d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
- e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl, and

provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

20

X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-;

m is 0, 1 or 2;

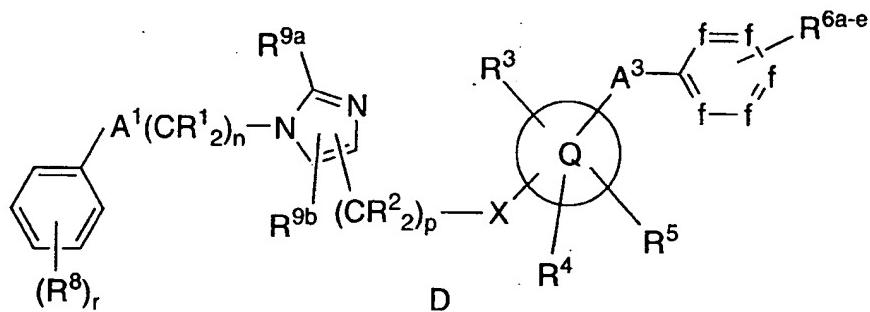
25 n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4, provided that p is not 0 if X is a bond or O; and

r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen;

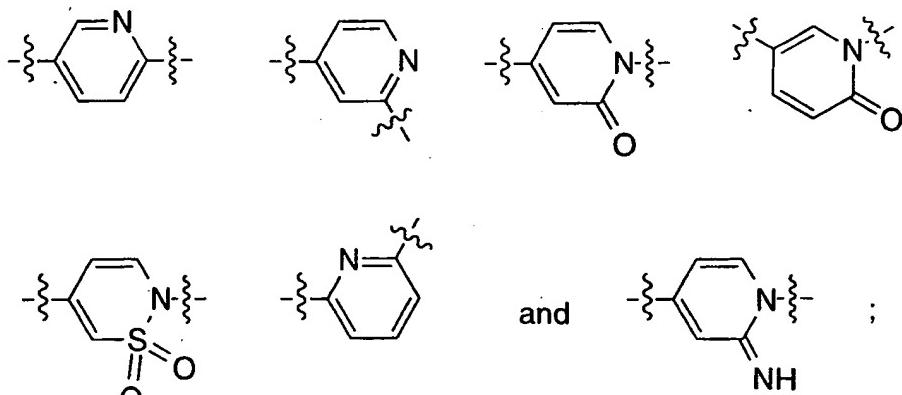
30 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In a more preferred embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula D:



wherein:

Q is selected from



5

from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are independently CH;

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl or C₁-C₆ alkyl;
10

R² is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
- 15 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;

R³ is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R⁴ is selected from H, halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl and CF₃;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,

$R^{12}O$ -, $R^{11}S(O)m$ -, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}$ -, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)$ -,
 $R^{10}N-C(NR^{10})$ -, CN, $R^{10}C(O)$ -, N₃, -N(R^{10})₂, and
 $R^{11}OC(O)-NR^{10}$; or

- 5 any two of R^{6a} , R^{6b} , R^{6c} , R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

R^8 is independently selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O⁻, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-,
15 R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O⁻, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

- 20 R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;

R^{10} is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

- 25 R^{11} is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

30 R^{12} is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

A^1 is selected from: a bond, -C(O)-, O, -N(R^{10})-, or S(O)_m;

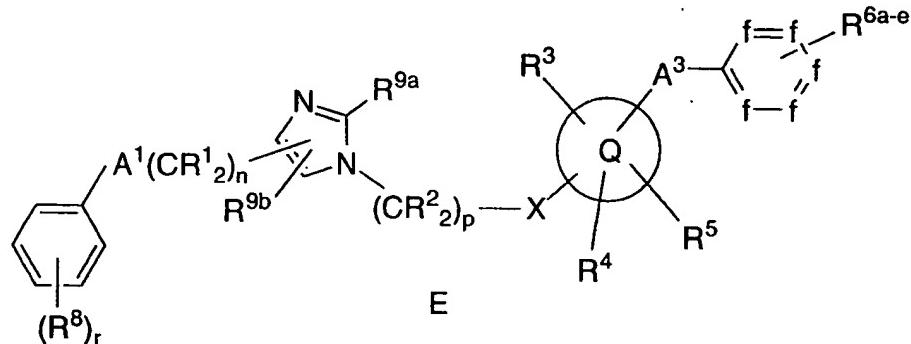
A^3 is selected from: -CH₂-; O; -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;

5 X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or
-C(=O)-,

n is 0 or 1; provided that n is not 0 if A¹ is a bond, O,
-N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;
10 m is 0, 1 or 2;
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
r is 0, 1 or 2;

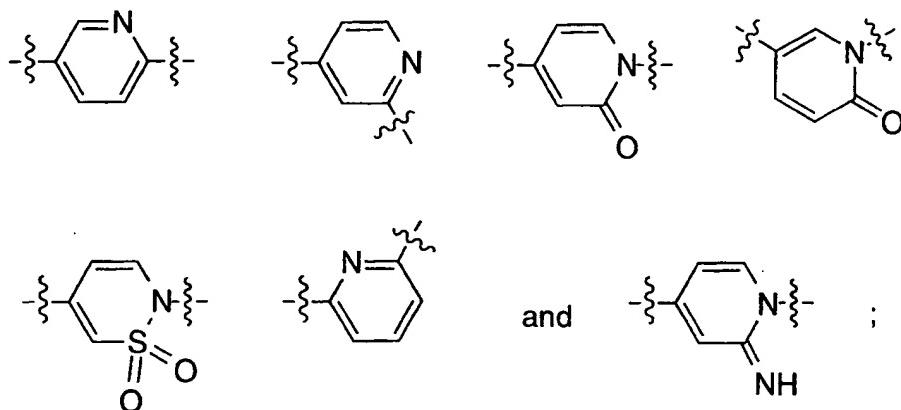
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 In another more preferred embodiment of this invention,
the inhibitors of prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the
formula E:



wherein:

20 Q is selected from



from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are independently CH;

5 R1 is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R² is independently selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;

15

R³ is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,

- 5 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R⁴ is selected from H, halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl and CF₃;

10

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,
c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
20 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
25 R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-; or

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

30 R⁸ is independently selected from:

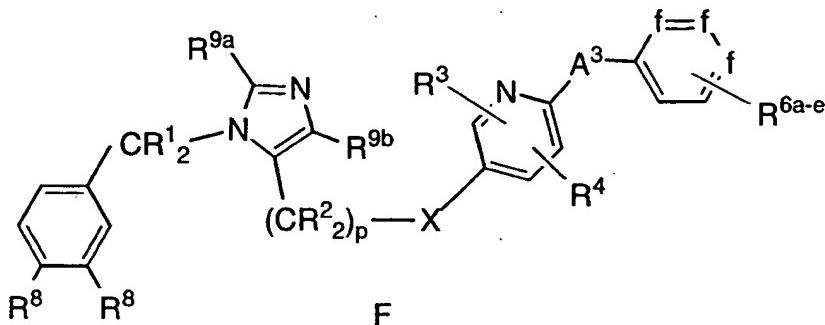
- a) hydrogen,

- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle,
C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆
perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-,
(R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-,
-N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O-,
R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-,
R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- 10 R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;
R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl,
2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;
- 15 R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;
- R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆
aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl,
C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl,
20 heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;
- A¹ is selected from: a bond, -C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;
- 25 A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;
- X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or
-C(=O)-;
- 30 n is 0 or 1;
m is 0, 1 or 2;
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4, provided that p is not 0 if X is a bond or O;
and

r is 0, 1 or 2;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In a further embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of
5 prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula F:



wherein:

from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are
10 independently CH;

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R² is independently selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
 b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂ or
 F,
 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl,
 heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;

20

R³ is selected from:

- 25 a) hydrogen,
 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
 substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆
 alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
 R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,

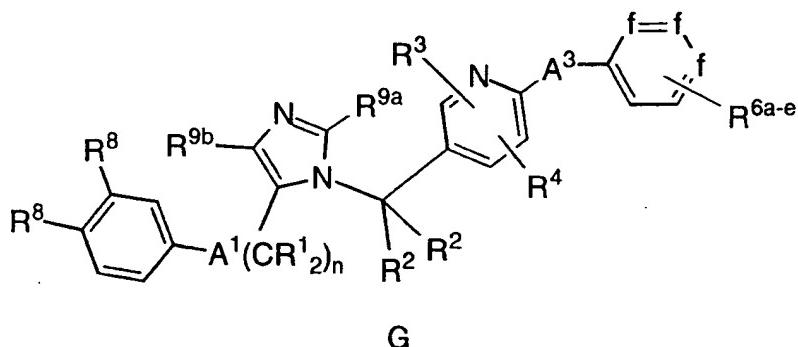
- R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂,
or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-;
- 5 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
10 R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R⁴ is selected from H, halogen, CH₃ and CF₃;

- R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:
- 15 a) hydrogen,
b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆
alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
20 R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂,
or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
25 substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
30 R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-; or
any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are
combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-,
-CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

- R⁸ is independently selected from: -CN, Cl, -NO₂, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, and 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy;
- 5 R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;
- R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;
- 10 R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;
- R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;
- 15 A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;
- 20 X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-;
- m is 0, 1 or 2; and
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- 25 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In a further embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula G:



wherein:

from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are
5 independently CH;

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

10 R² is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle or C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl,
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;

15 R³ is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
20 substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or

5 substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R^4 is selected from H, halogen, CH_3 and CF_3 ;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-, or

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂- , -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

30 R⁸ is independently selected from: -CN, Cl, -NO₂, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, and
2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy;

R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;

R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl,
2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

5

R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 10
2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

A¹ is selected from: a bond, -C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;

15

m is 0, 1 or 2; and

n is 0 or 1;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20

Specific examples of the compounds of the invention are:

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole

25

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylphenoxy) pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio) pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole

30

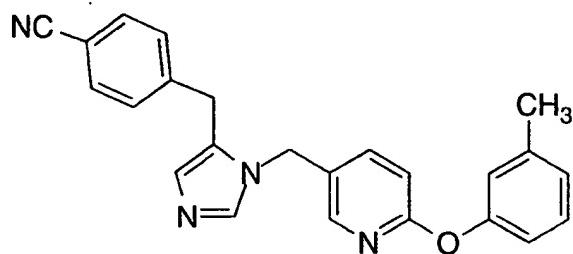
5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(cyclohexylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylthio)pyrid-4-ylmethyl]-imidazole

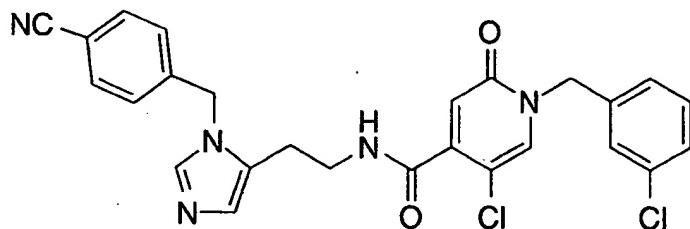
35

- 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(cyclohexylamino)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole
- 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-
imidazole -S- oxide
- 5
2-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -6-(3-
trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine
- 10
3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -6-(3-
trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine
- 3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -5-(3-
trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine
- 15
3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -5-(3-
trifluoromethylbenzyloxy)pyridine
- 5-chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic
acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
- 20
1-(3-Chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic acid {2-
[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
- 1-(3-Trifluoromethylbenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic
acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
- 25
1-(3-Chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic acid {2-
[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
- 30
5-Chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic
acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
- 6-[N-(3-Chlorobenzyl) carbamoyl]- 4-ethoxy-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid
{2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide

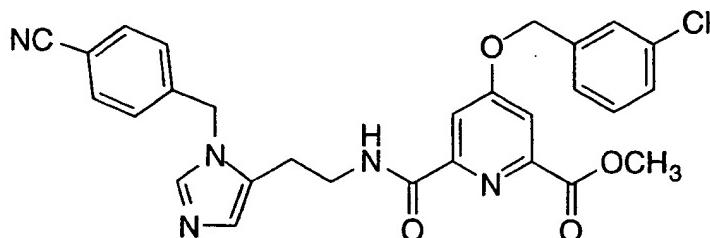
- 6-[N-(3-Chlorophenyl) carbamoyl]- 4-ethoxy-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid
 {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
- 5 4-(3-Chlorobenzylxy)- 6-methoxycarbonyl- pyridine-2-carboxylic acid
 {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
- 10 4-(5-{[6-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 15 4-(5-{[6-(phenylethynyl)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 15 4-(5-{[6-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphth-6-yloxy)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile and
- 15 4-(5-{[6-(2-phenylethyl)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 20 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.
- Particular examples of the compounds of the instant invention are:
- 25 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio) pyrid-5-ylmethyl])-imidazole
- The chemical structure shows an imidazole ring connected to a pyridine ring at the 2-position. The pyridine ring has a chlorine atom at the 4-position and a thiomethyl group (-S-CH₂-) at the 5-position. The imidazole ring is attached to the pyridine ring at the 2-position. A 4-cyanobenzyl group (-CH₂-C₆H₄-CN) is attached to the imidazole ring at the 5-position.
- 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylphenoxy) pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole



5-chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide



- 5 4-(3-Chlorobenzyl)- 6-methoxycarbonyl- pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide



or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

- The compounds of the present invention may have
 10 asymmetric centers and occur as racemates, racemic mixtures, and as individual diastereomers, with all possible isomers, including optical isomers, being included in the present invention. When any variable (e.g. aryl, heterocycle, R¹, R² etc.) occurs more than one time in any constituent, its definition on each occurrence is independent at every
 15 other occurrence. Also, combinations of substituents/or variables are permissible only if such combinations result in stable compounds.

As used herein, "alkyl" and the alkyl portion of aralkyl and similar terms, is intended to include both branched and straight-chain

saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups having the specified number of carbon atoms; "alkoxy" represents an alkyl group of indicated number of carbon atoms attached through an oxygen bridge.

As used herein, "cycloalkyl" is intended to include non-aromatic cyclic hydrocarbon groups having the specified number of carbon atoms. Examples of cycloalkyl groups include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and the like.

"Alkenyl" groups include those groups having the specified number of carbon atoms and having one or several double bonds. Examples of alkenyl groups include vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, pentenyl, hexenyl, heptenyl, cyclopropenyl, cyclobutenyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, 1-propenyl, 2-butenyl, 2-methyl-2-butenyl, isoprenyl, farnesyl, geranyl, geranylgeranyl and the like.

"Alkynyl" groups include those groups having the specified number of carbon atoms and having one triple bond. Examples of alkynyl groups include acetylene, 2-butynyl, 2-pentynyl, 3-pentynyl and the like.

"Halogen" or "halo" as used herein means fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo.

As used herein, "carbocyclic ring" is intended to mean any stable monocyclic carbon ring of the designated ring atoms, which can either be aromatic or non-aromatic.

As used herein, "aryl," and the aryl portion of aroyl and aralkyl, is intended to mean any stable monocyclic or bicyclic carbon ring of up to 7 members in each ring, wherein at least one ring is aromatic. Examples of such aryl elements include phenyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, biphenyl, phenanthryl, anthryl or acenaphthyl.

The term heterocycle or heterocyclic, as used herein, represents a stable 5- to 7-membered monocyclic or stable 8- to 11-membered bicyclic heterocyclic ring which is either saturated or unsaturated, and which consists of carbon atoms and from one to four heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S, and including any bicyclic group in which any of the above-defined hetero-

cyclic rings is fused to a benzene ring. The heterocyclic ring may be attached at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in the creation of a stable structure. Examples of such heterocyclic elements include, but are not limited to, azepinyl, benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl,
5 benzofurazanyl, benzopyranyl, benzothiopyranyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzoxazolyl, chromanyl, cinnolinyl, dihydrobenzofuryl, dihydrobenzothienyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl sulfone, furyl, imidazolidinyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolyl, indolinyl, indolyl, isochromanyl, isoindolinyl, isoquinolinyl,
10 isothiazolidinyl, isothiazolyl, isothiazolidinyl, morpholinyl, naphthyridinyl, oxadiazolyl, 2-oxoazepinyl, oxazolyl, 2-oxopiperazinyl, 2-oxopiperdinyl, 2-oxopyrrolidinyl, piperidyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolidinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinolinyl, quinoxaliny, 15 tetrahydrofuryl, tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, thiamorpholinyl, thiamorpholinyl sulfoxide, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, thienofuryl, thienothienyl, and thietyl.

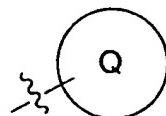
As used herein, "heteroaryl" is intended to mean any stable monocyclic or bicyclic carbon ring of up to 7 members in each ring, 20 wherein at least one ring is aromatic and wherein from one to four carbon atoms are replaced by heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S. Examples of such heterocyclic elements include, but are not limited to, benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzofurazanyl, benzopyranyl, benzothiopyranyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzoxazolyl, chromanyl, cinnolinyl, dihydrobenzofuryl, dihydrobenzothienyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl sulfone, furyl, imidazolyl, indolinyl, indolyl, isochromanyl, isoindolinyl, isoquinolinyl, isothiazolyl, naphthyridinyl, oxadiazolyl, piperidyl, piperazinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinolinyl, quinoxaliny, 25 tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, thiazolyl, thienofuryl, thienothienyl, and thietyl.

As used herein in the definition of R³, R⁴, R⁵ and R^{6a-e}, the term "the substituted group" is intended to mean a substituted C₁₋₈

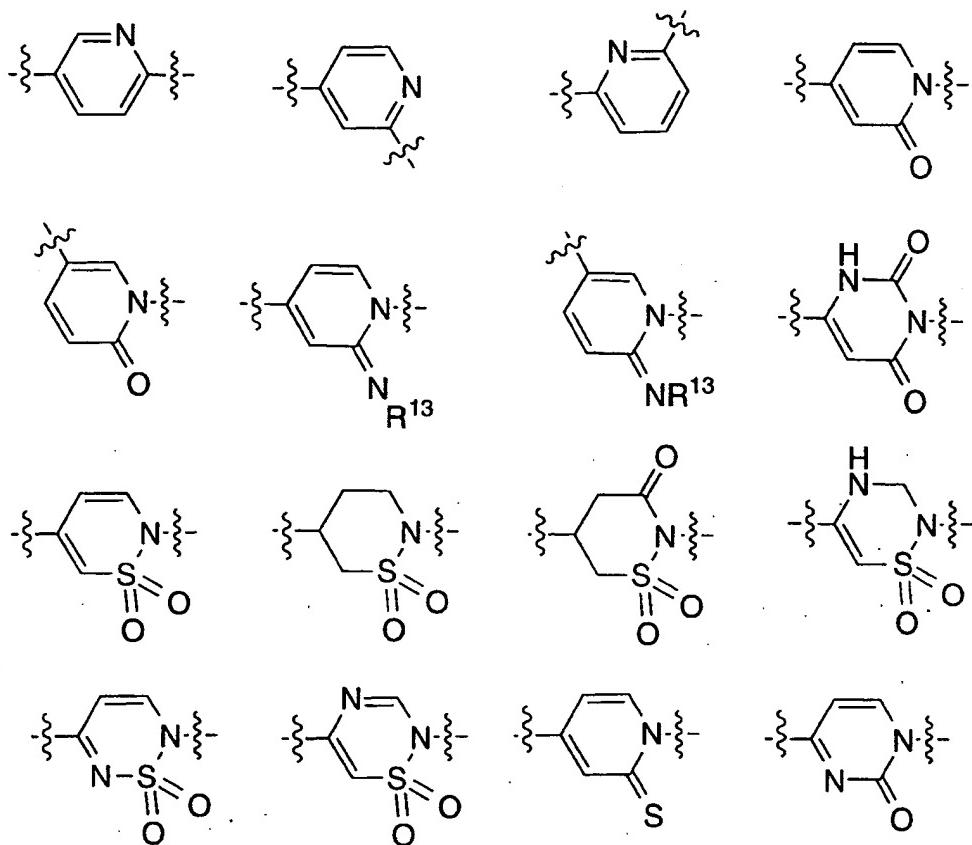
alkyl, substituted C₂-8 alkenyl, substituted C₂-8 alkynyl, substituted aryl or substituted heterocycle from which the substituent(s) R³, R⁴, R⁵ and R^{6a-e} are selected.

- As used herein in the definition of R⁷, the substituted C₁-8 alkyl, substituted C₃-6 cycloalkyl, substituted aroyl, substituted aryl, substituted heteroaroyl, substituted arylsulfonyl, substituted hetero-arylsulfonyl and substituted heterocycle include moieties containing from 1 to 3 substituents in addition to the point of attachment to the rest of the compound.
- 10 Lines drawn into the ring systems from substituents (such as from R³, R⁴, Q etc.) means that the indicated bond may be attached to any of the substitutable ring carbon or nitrogen atoms.

The substituent illustrated by the structure

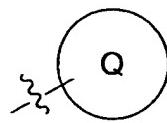


- 15 represents a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional heteroatoms selected from N, S and O, and which optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to the nitrogen atom and includes the following ring systems:

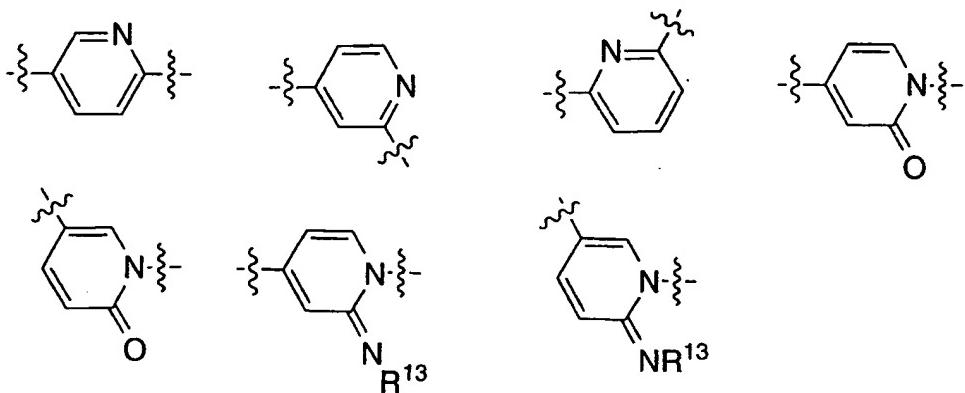


Preferably, the structure

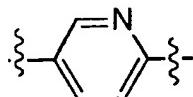
5



is selected from:

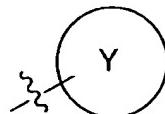


Most preferably, Q is

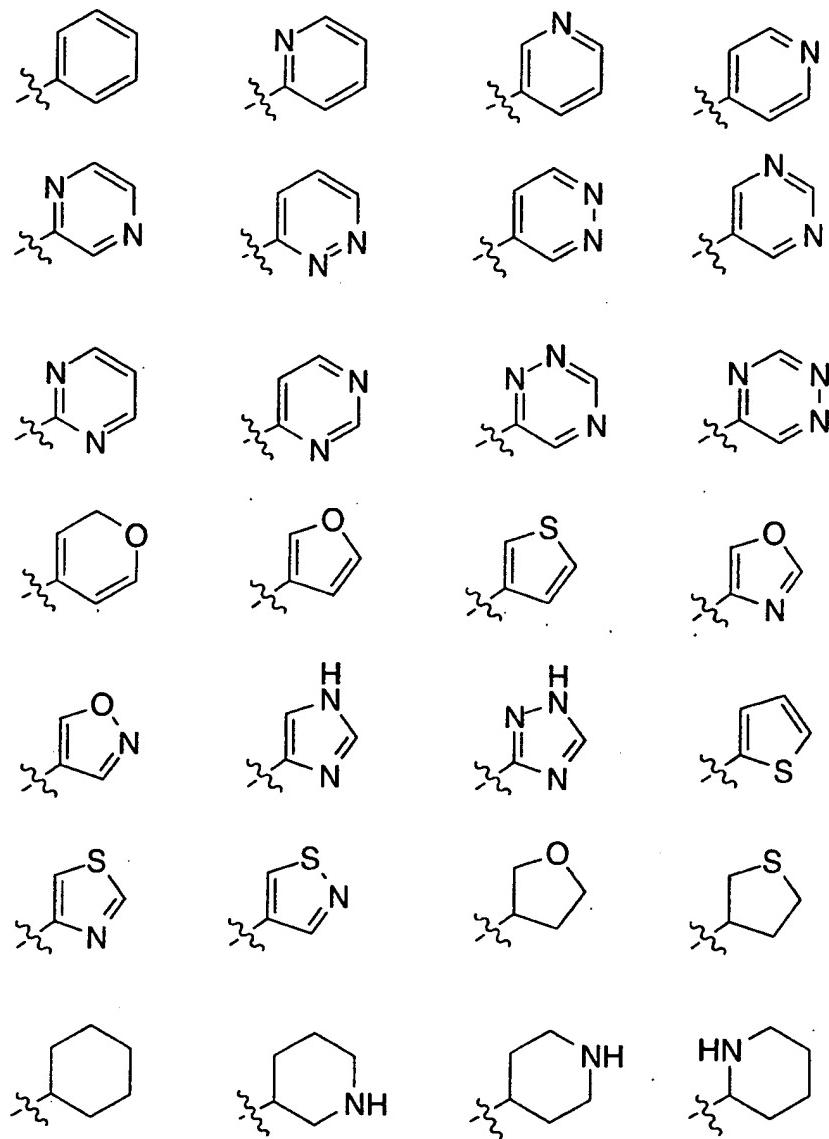


- 5 It is understood that such rings may be substituted by R³, R⁴ and/or R⁵ as defined hereinabove.

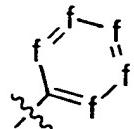
The substituent illustrated by the structure



- 10 represents a 5, 6 or 7 membered carbocyclic ring wherein from 0 to 3 carbon atoms are replaced by a heteroatom selected from N, S and O, and wherein Y is attached to A³ through a carbon atom and includes the following ring systems:

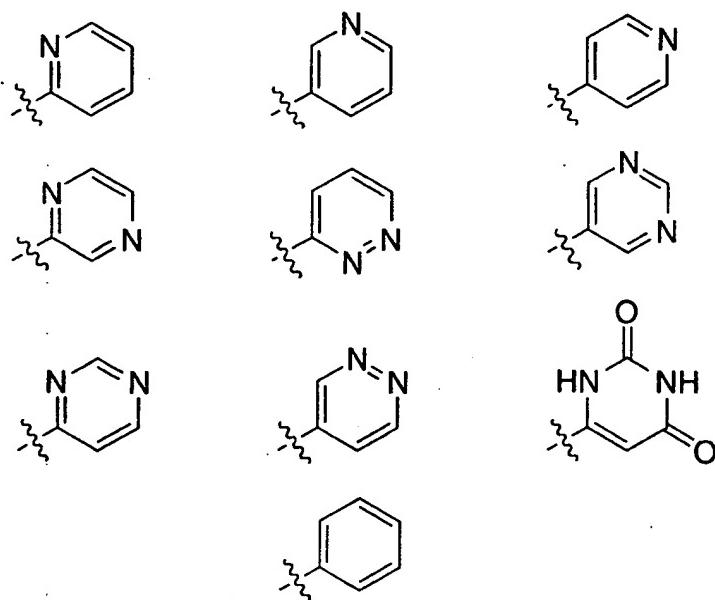


Preferably Y is the moiety designated by the following structure



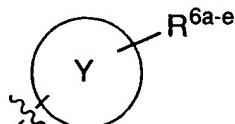
5

which represents an aromatic 6-membered ring and includes the following ring systems:

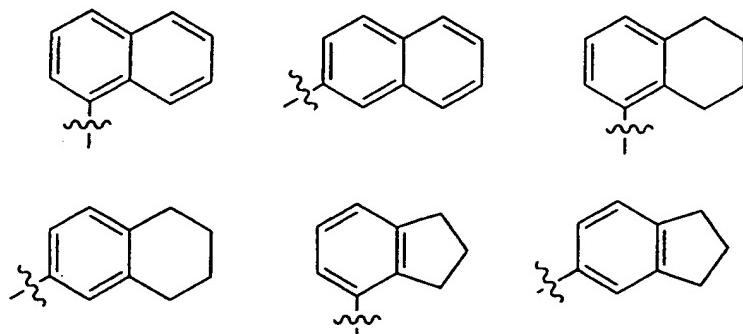


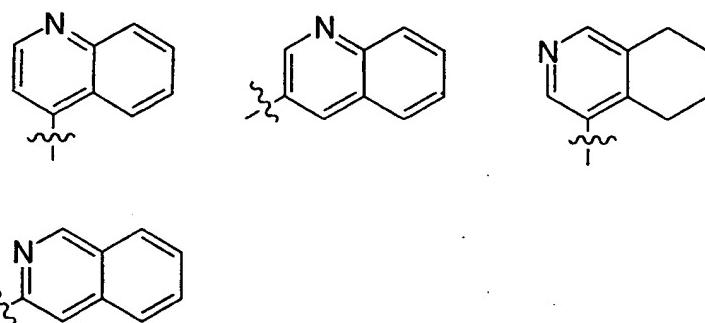
wherein it is understood that one of the ring carbon atoms is substituted with A³. Preferably, the Y is selected from phenyl and pyridyl.

The moiety described as



where any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₄- includes, but is not limited to, the following structures:





It is understood that such fused ring moieties may be further substituted by the remaining R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and/or R^{6e} as defined

5 hereinabove.

Preferably, R¹ and R² are independently selected from:
hydrogen, R¹¹C(O)O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, R¹⁰O- or
unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted
10 phenyl, -N(R¹⁰)₂, R¹⁰O- and R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-.

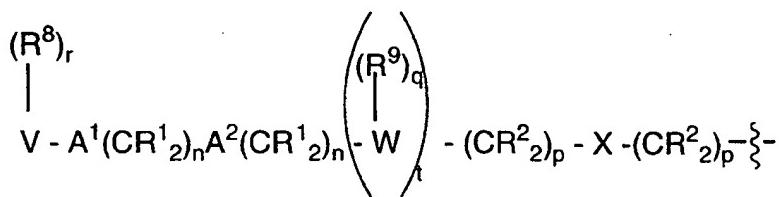
Preferably, R³ is selected from:
a) hydrogen,
b) C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-,
CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)- or -N(R¹⁰)₂,
15 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
20 R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-.

Preferably, R⁴ is selected from: hydrogen, halogen,
trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy and C₁-C₆ alkyl.

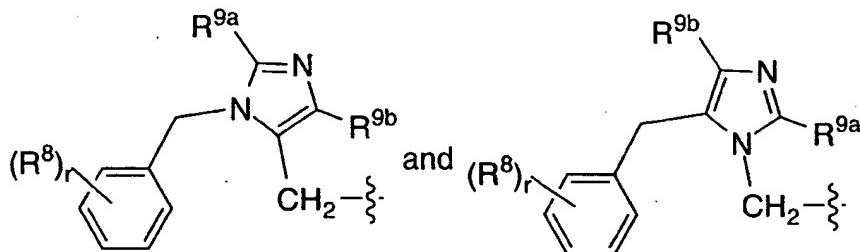
25 Preferably, R⁵ is hydrogen.

Preferably, R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently
selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
 - b) C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)- or -N(R¹⁰)₂,
 - c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl; and
 - 5 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)- or -N(R¹⁰)₂.
- Preferably, R⁸ is independently selected from:
- 10 a) hydrogen, and
 - b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkoxy, 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy, -CH₂NHC(O)CH₃, -NHC(O)CH₃ or CN.
- 15 Preferably, R⁹ is hydrogen, halogen or methyl.
- Preferably, R¹⁰ is selected from H, C₁-C₆ alkyl and benzyl.
- Preferably, A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, -S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)- and
- 20 -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂-.
- Preferably, A³ is selected from -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂O-, -OCH₂- or S(O)_m. Most preferably, A³ is selected from: -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-, -OCH₂-, O or S(O)_m.
- 25 Preferably, V is selected from hydrogen, heterocycle and aryl. More preferably, V is phenyl.
- Preferably, W is selected from imidazolinyl, imidazolyl, oxazolyl, pyrazolyl, ppyrrolidinyl, thiazolyl and pyridyl. More preferably, W is selected from imidazolyl and pyridyl.
- 30 Preferably, n and r are independently 0, 1, or 2.
Preferably s is 0.
Preferably t is 1.
Preferably, the moiety



is selected from:



- It is intended that the definition of any substituent or variable (e.g., R1, R2, R⁹, n, etc.) at a particular location in a molecule be independent of its definitions elsewhere in that molecule. Thus, -N(R¹⁰)₂ represents -NHH, -NHCH₃, -NHC₂H₅, etc. It is understood that substituents and substitution patterns on the compounds of the instant invention can be selected by one of ordinary skill in the art to provide compounds that are chemically stable and that can be synthesized by techniques known in the art, as well as those methods set forth below, from readily available starting materials.

The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of this invention include the conventional non-toxic salts of the compounds of this invention as formed, e.g., from non-toxic inorganic or organic acids. For example, such conventional non-toxic salts include those derived from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, sulfamic, phosphoric, nitric and the like; and the salts prepared from organic acids such as acetic, propionic, succinic, glycolic, stearic, lactic, malic, tartaric, citric, ascorbic, palmoic, maleic, hydroxymaleic, phenylacetic, glutamic, benzoic, salicylic, sulfanilic, 2-acetoxy-benzoic, fumaric, toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic, ethane disulfonic, oxalic, isethionic, trifluoroacetic and the like.

The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of this invention can be synthesized from the compounds of this invention which contain a basic moiety by conventional chemical methods. Generally, the salts are prepared either by ion exchange 5 chromatography or by reacting the free base with stoichiometric amounts or with an excess of the desired salt-forming inorganic or organic acid in a suitable solvent or various combinations of solvents.

Reactions used to generate the compounds of this invention are prepared by employing reactions as shown in the 10 Schemes 1-19, in addition to other standard manipulations such as ester hydrolysis, cleavage of protecting groups, etc., as may be known in the literature or exemplified in the experimental procedures. Substituents R³, R⁶ and R⁸, as shown in the Schemes, represent the substituents R³, R⁴, R⁵, R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d}, R^{6e} 15 and R⁸; although only one such R³, R⁶ or R⁸ is present in the intermediates and products of the schemes, it is understood that the reactions shown are also applicable when such aryl or heterocyclic moieties contain multiple substituents.

These reactions may be employed in a linear sequence 20 to provide the compounds of the invention or they may be used to synthesize fragments which are subsequently joined by the alkylation reactions described in the Schemes. The reactions described in the Schemes are illustrative only and are not meant to be limiting. Other reactions useful in the preparation of heteroaryl moieties are 25 described in "Comprehensive Organic Chemistry, Volume 4: Heterocyclic Compounds" ed. P.G. Sammes, Oxford (1979) and references therein.

Synopsis of Schemes 1-19:

30 The requisite intermediates are in some cases commercially available, or can be prepared according to literature procedures. Schemes 1-9 illustrate synthesis of the instant bicyclic compounds which incorporate a preferred benzylimidazolyl sidechain. Thus, in Scheme 1, for example, a bicyclic intermediate

that is not commercially available may be synthesized by methods known in the art. Thus, a suitably substituted halogenated picoline 1 may be converted to the dibromo intermediate 2. The dibromide 2 may be coupled to a suitably substituted benzylimidazolyl 3 to provide, after deprotection, the intermediate 4. This intermediate 4 may then be coupled under vigorous conditions to a carbocyclic/heterocyclic ring having a nucleophilic heteroatom to provide a compound of the instant invention 5.

5 Scheme 2 illustrates an analogous synthesis of an isomeric intermediate 8 starting from a suitably substituted picoline 6.

10 Synthesis of the instant compounds wherein ring Q is a pyridinone moiety is illustrated in Scheme 3. Thus, a suitably substituted pyridinonyl alcohol 10 may be synthesized starting from the corresponding isonicotinate 9 according to procedures described by Boekelhiede and Lehn (*J. Org. Chem.*, 26:428-430 (1961)). The alcohol is then protected and alkylated with a suitably substituted benzyl halide, to provide the intermediate bicyclic alcohol. The intermediate alcohol 3 may be converted to the corresponding bromide 11. The bromide 11 may be coupled to a suitably substituted benzylimidazolyl 3 to provide, after deprotection, the instant compound 12.

15 Scheme 4 illustrates synthesis of an instant compound wherein a non-hydrogen R^{9b} is incorporated in the instant compound. Thus, a readily available 4-substituted imidazole 13 may be selectively iodinated to provide the 5-iodoimidazole. That imidazole may then be protected and coupled to a suitably substituted benzyl moiety to provide intermediate 14. Intermediate 14 can then undergo the alkylation reactions that were described hereinabove.

20 Scheme 5 illustrates synthesis of instant compounds that incorporate a preferred imidazolyl moiety connected to the biscyclic portion of the instant compounds via an alkyl amino, sulfonamide

or amide linker. Thus, the 4-aminoalkylimidazole **15**, wherein the primary amine is protected as the phthalimide, is selectively alkylated then deprotected to provide the amine **16**. The amine **16** may then react under conditions well known in the art with various activated arylheteroaryl moieties to provide the instant compounds shown.

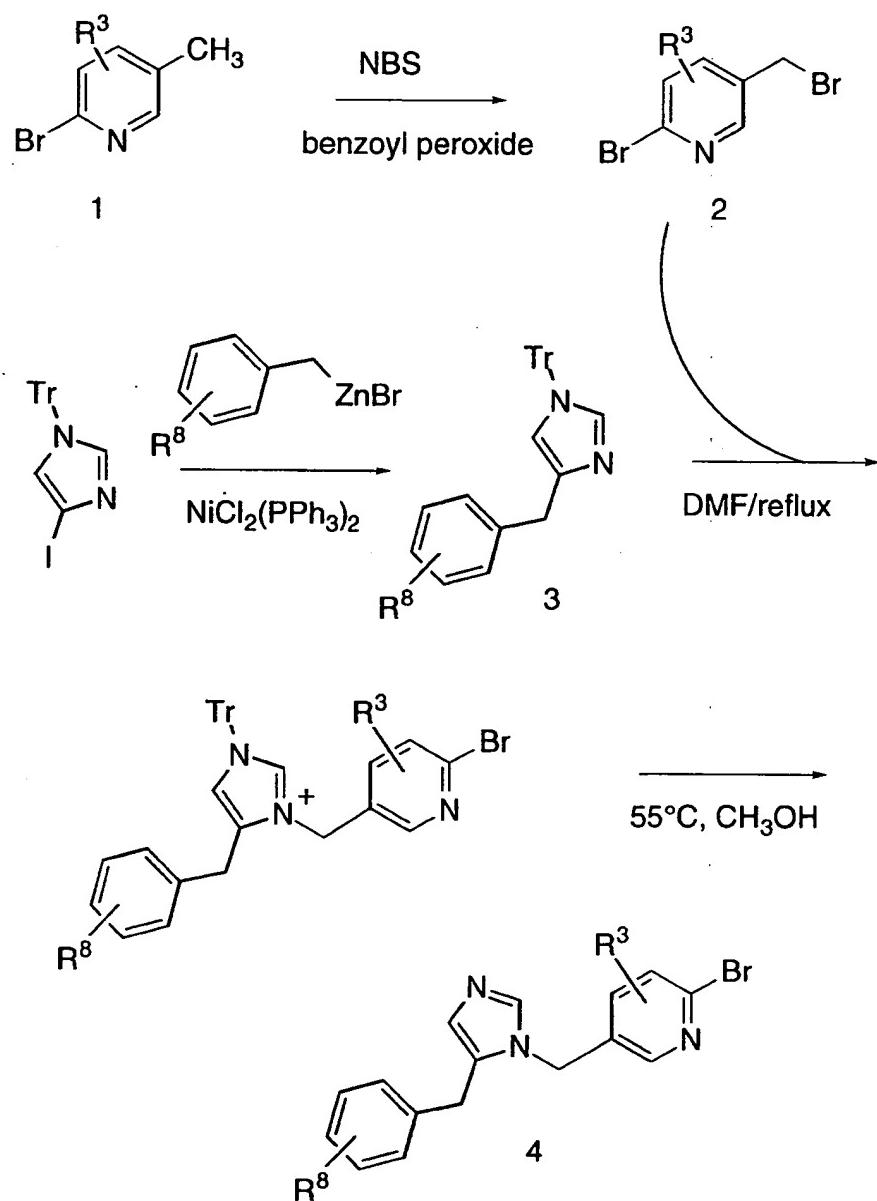
Compounds of the instant invention wherein the $A^1(CR^{12})_n A^2(CR^{12})_n$ linker is oxygen may be synthesized by methods known in the art, for example as shown in Scheme 6. The suitably substituted phenol **17** may be reacted with methyl N-(cyano)methanimidate to provide the 4-phenoxyimidazole **18**. After selective protection of one of the imidazolyl nitrogens, the intermediate **19** can undergo alkylation reactions as described for the benzylimidazoles hereinabove.

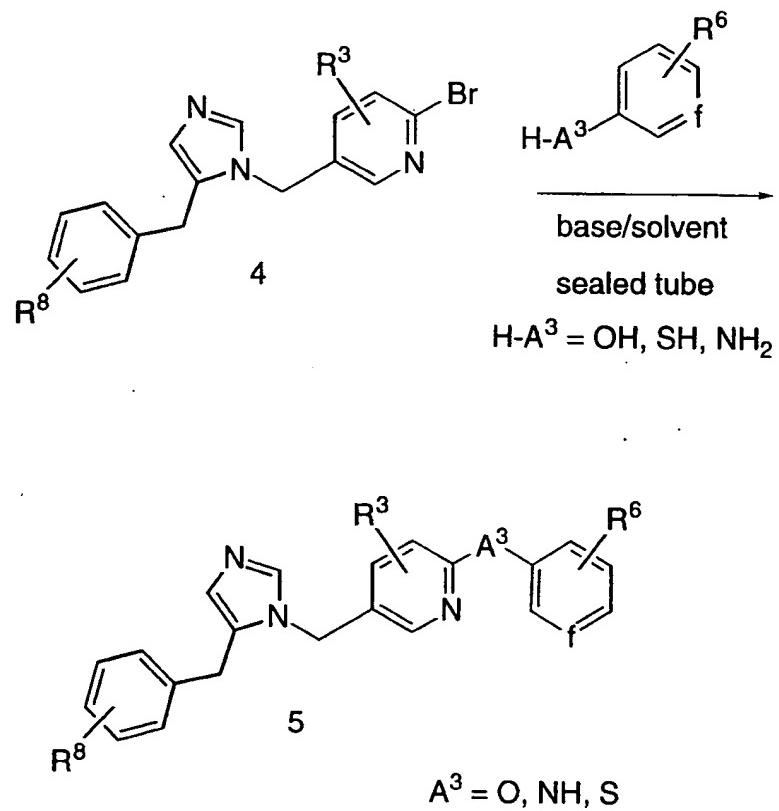
Compounds of the instant invention wherein the $A^1(CR^{12})_n A^2(CR^{12})_n$ linker is a substituted methylene may be synthesized by the methods shown in Scheme 7. Thus, the N-protected imidazolyl iodide **20** is reacted, under Grignard conditions with a suitably protected benzaldehyde to provide the alcohol **21**. Acylation, followed by the alkylation and nucleophilic displacement procedures illustrated in the Schemes above (in particular, Scheme 1) provides the instant compound **22**. If other R¹ substituents are desired, the acetyl moiety can be manipulated as illustrated in the Scheme.

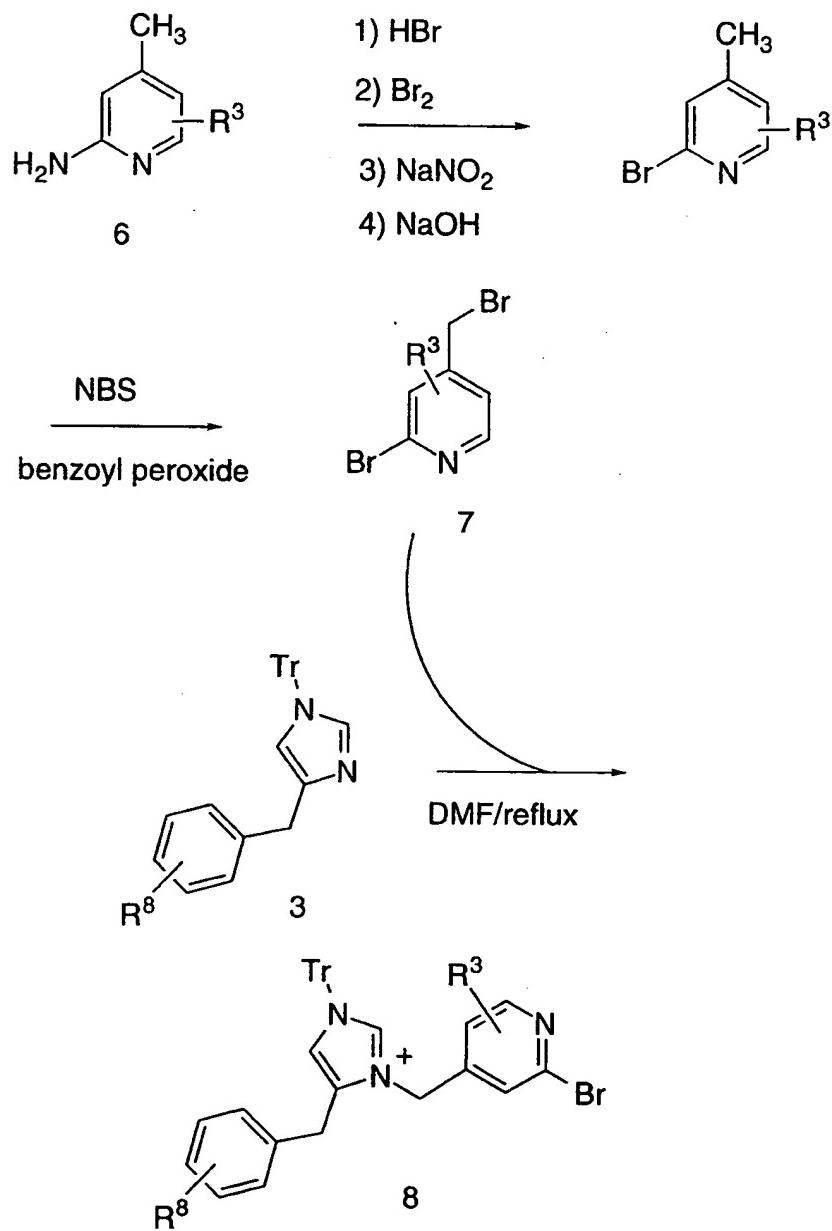
Scheme 8 illustrates incorporation of an acetyl moiety as the $(CR^{22})_p X (CR^{22})_p$ linker of the instant compounds. Thus, the suitably substituted acetyl pyridine **23** is brominated to provide intermediate **24**. Reaction with the imidazolyl reagent **5** provides, after deprotection and further functionalization, the instant compound **25**.

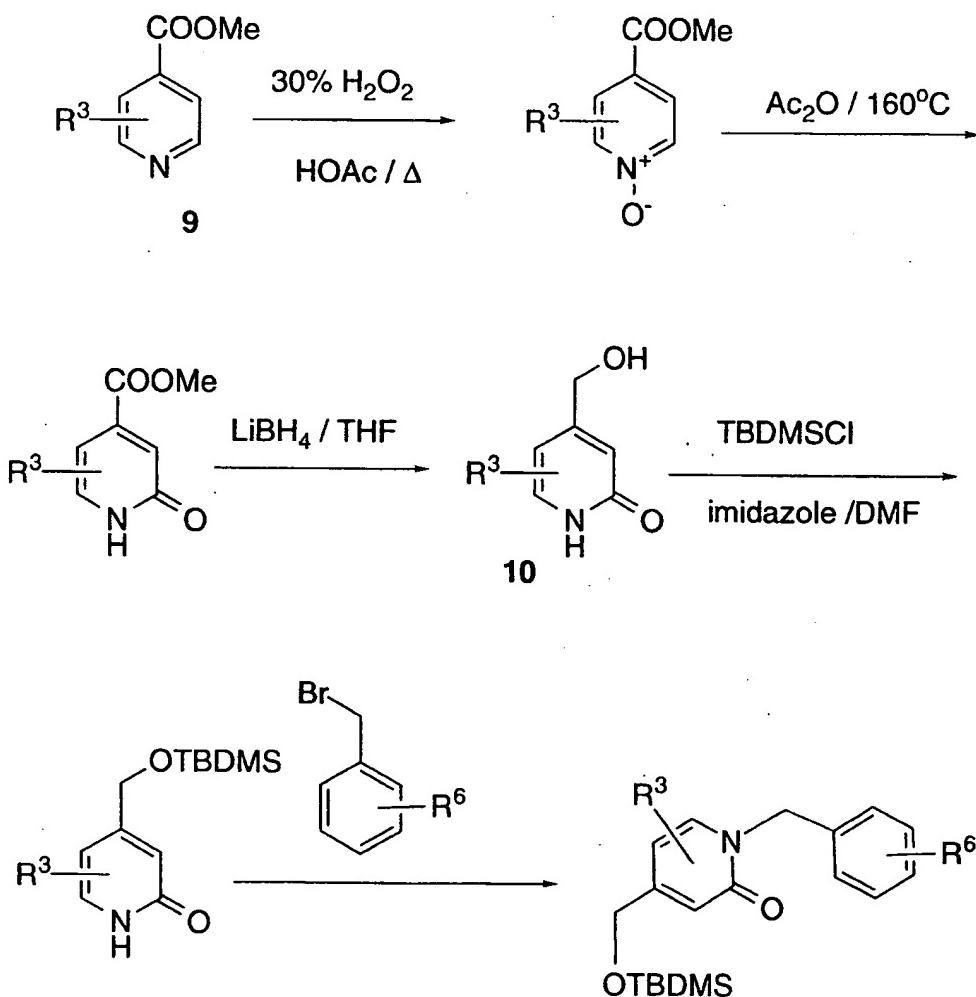
Scheme 9 illustrates a synthetic route to the instant compounds wherein the heterocyclic-linker-cyclic moiety is first formed and then couple to the preferred imidazolyl moiety.

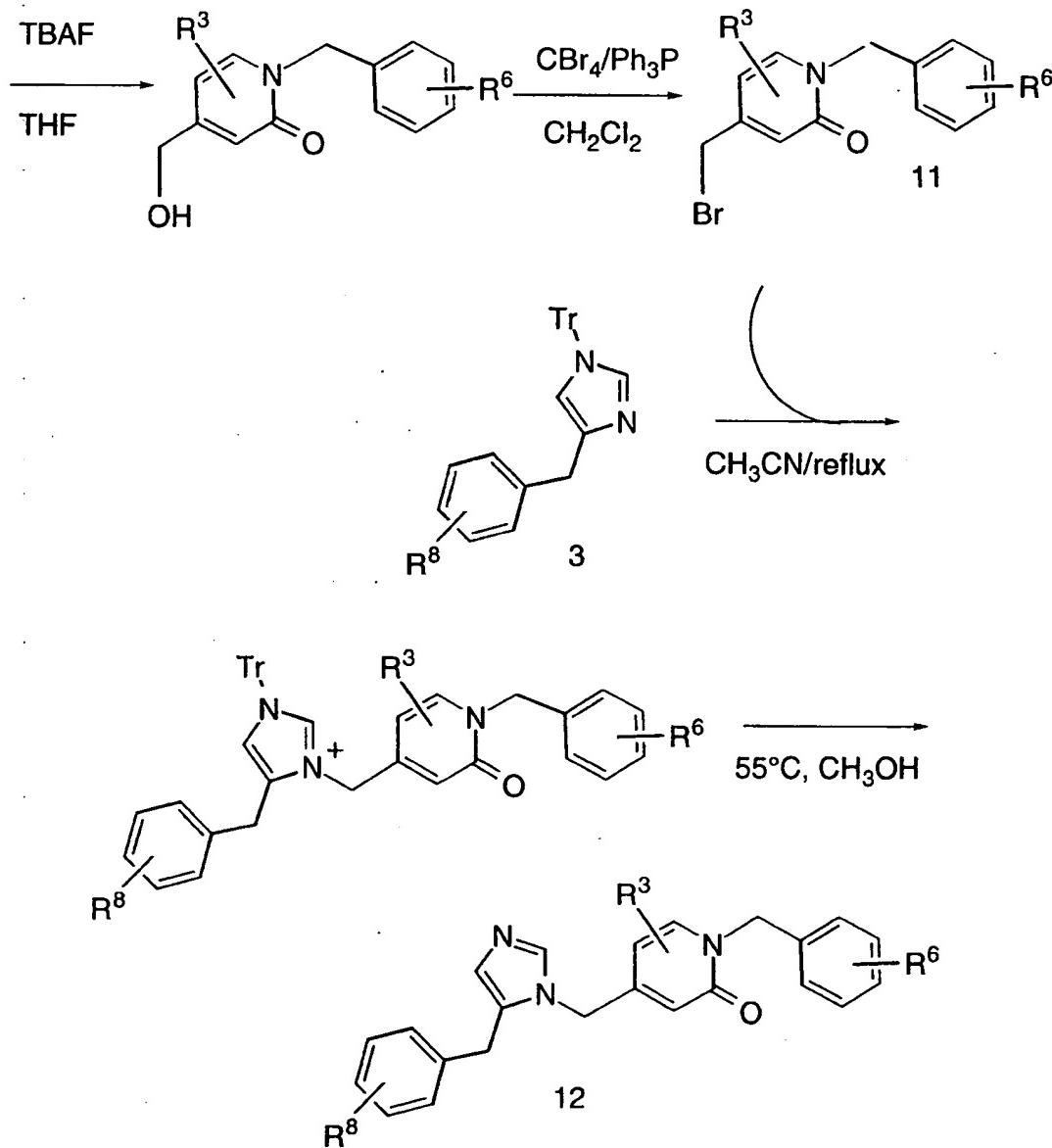
SCHEME 1

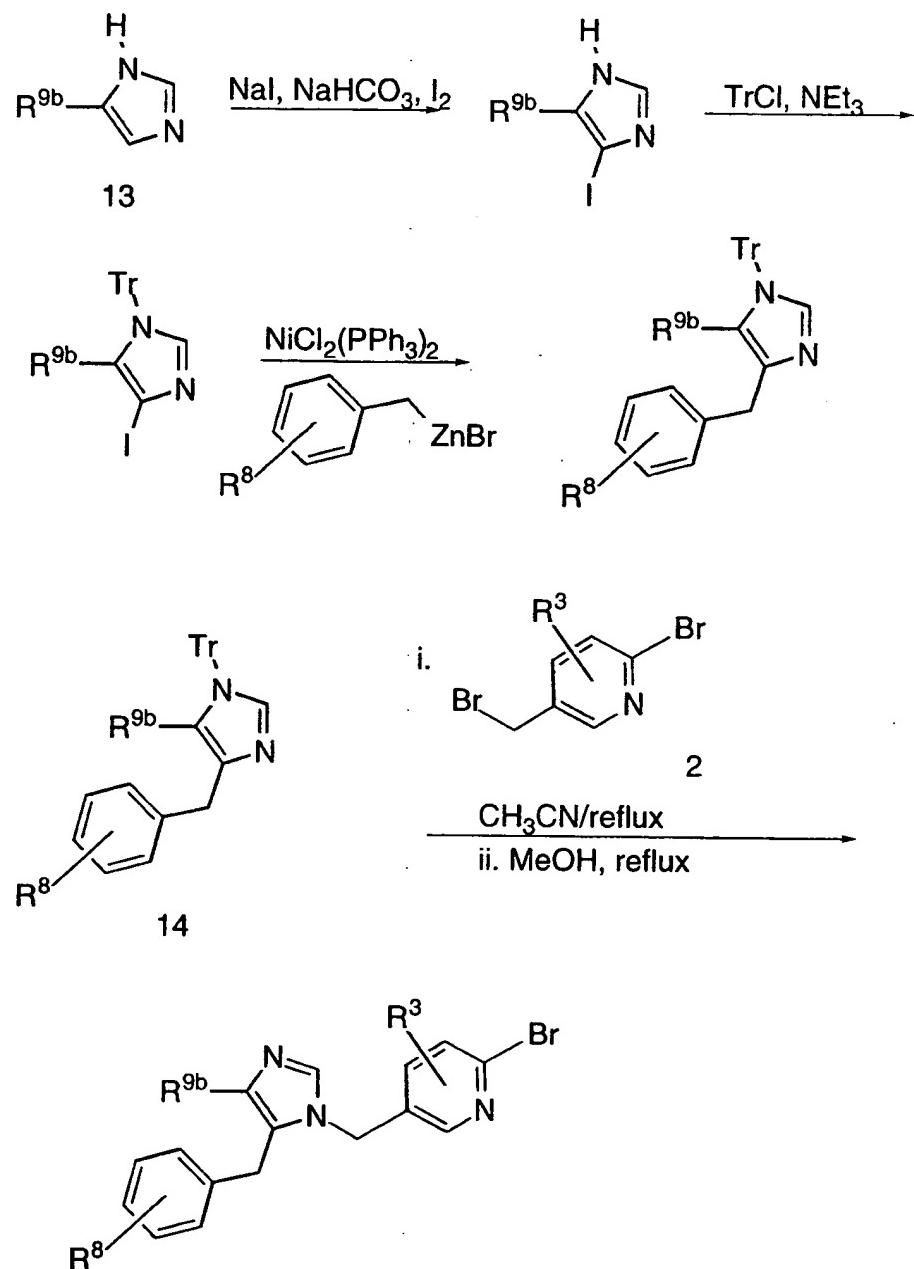


SCHEME 1 (continued)

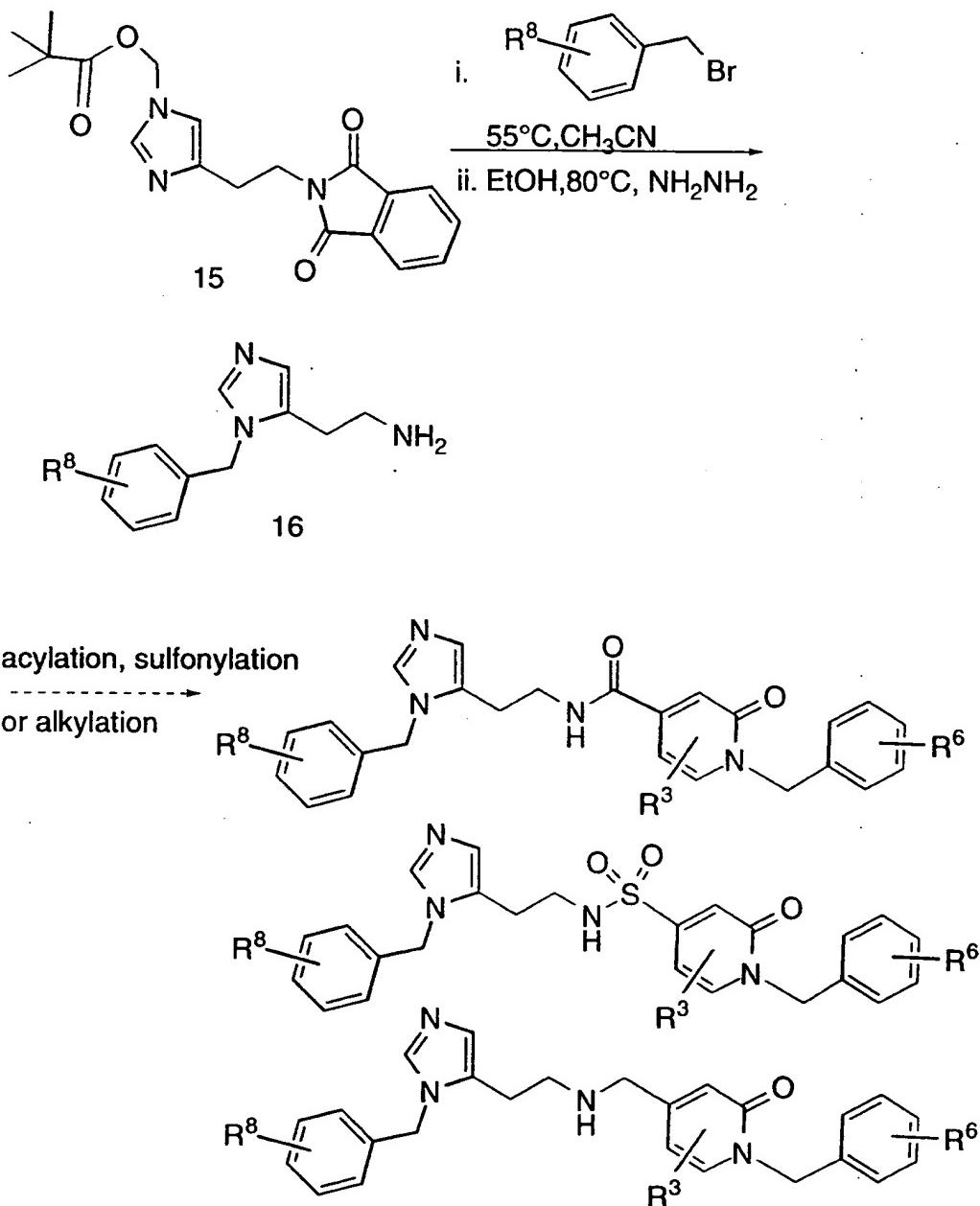
SCHEME 2

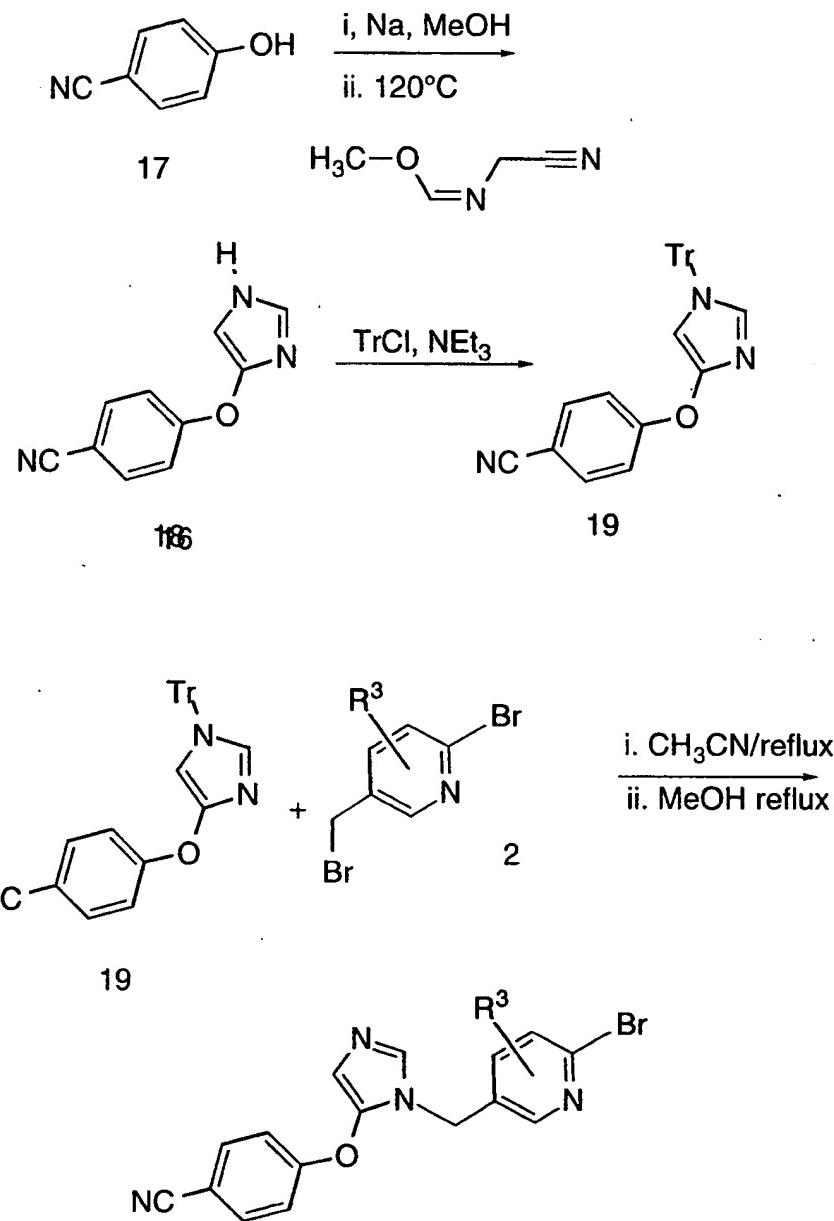
SCHEME 3

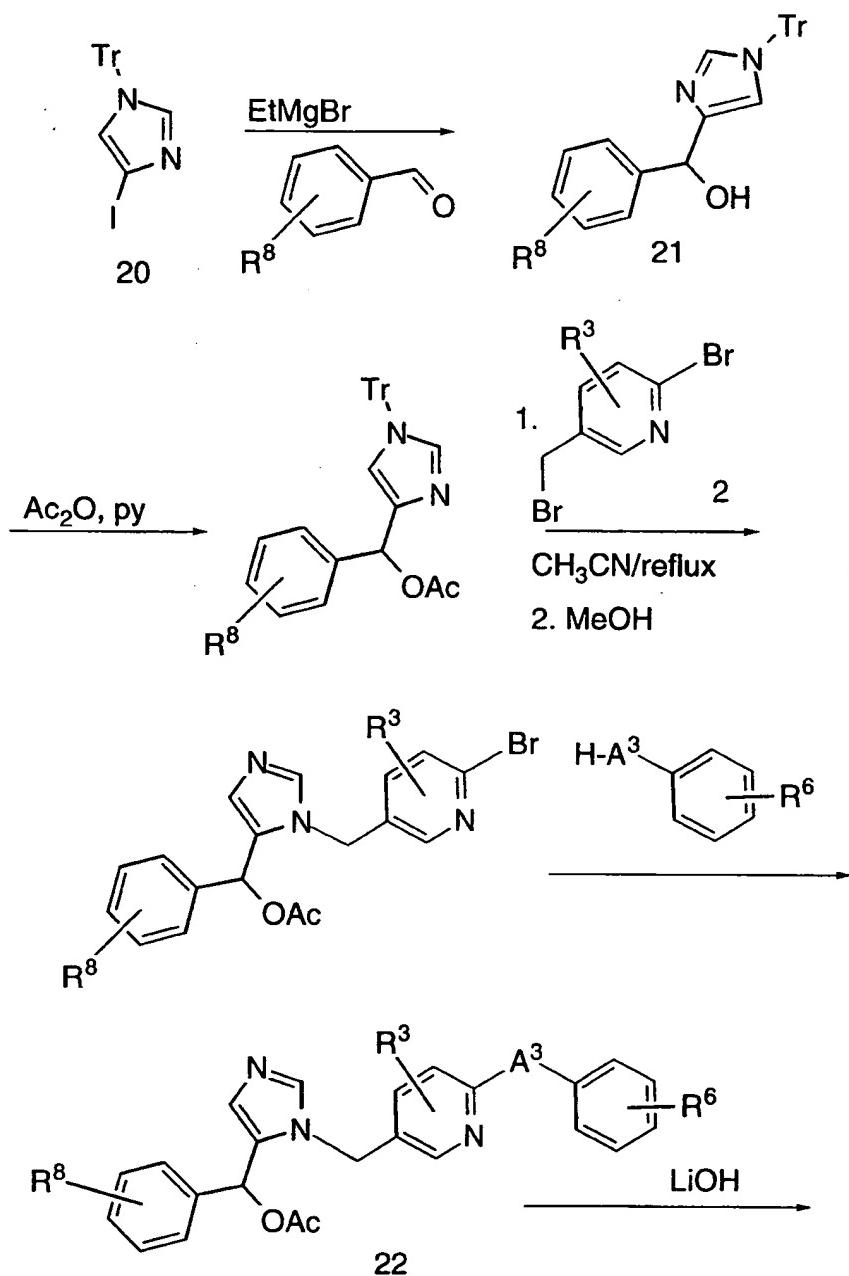
SCHEME 3 (continued)

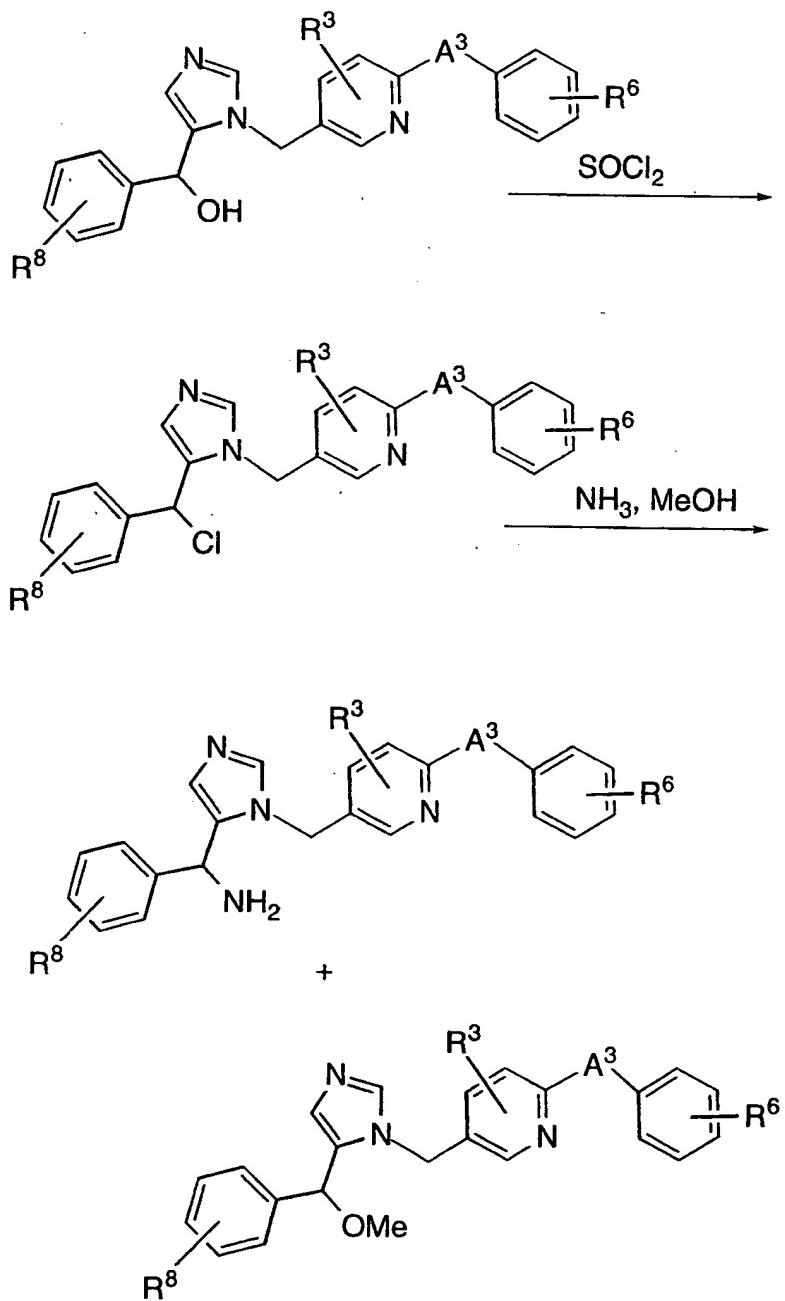
SCHEME 4

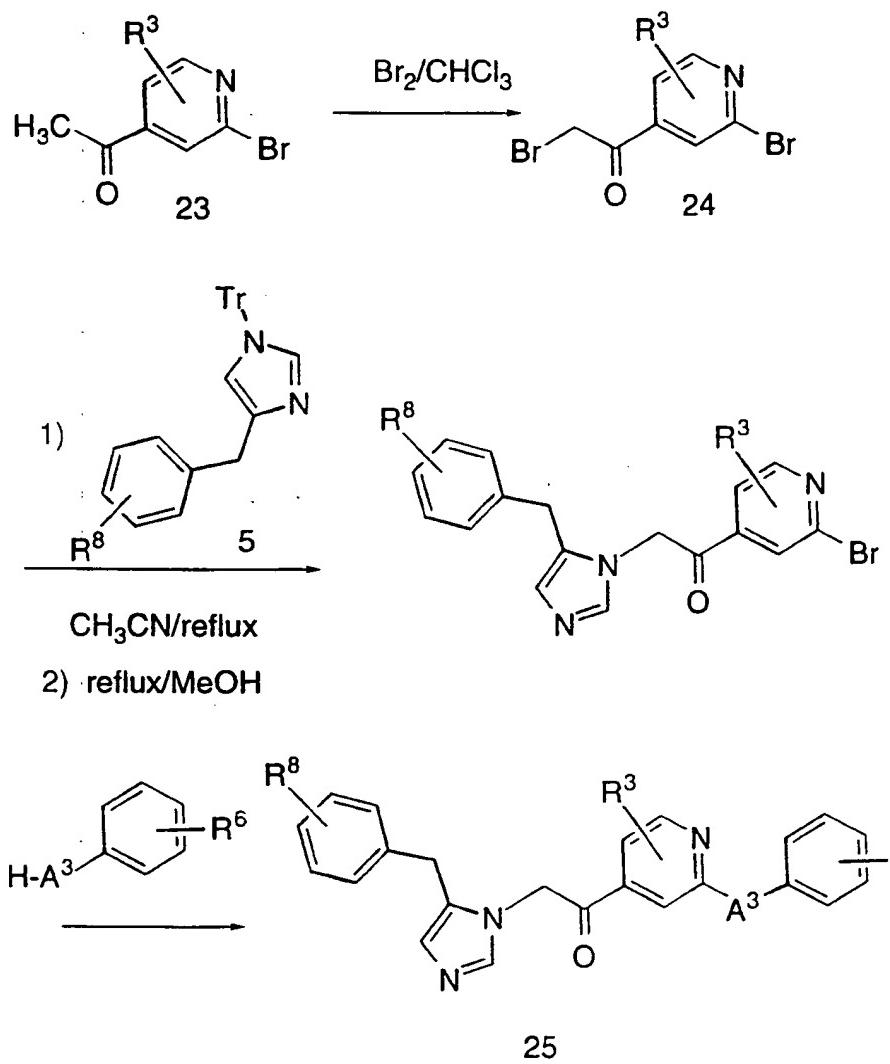
SCHEME 5

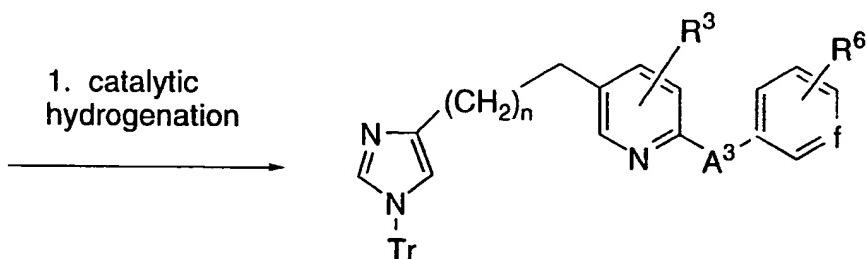
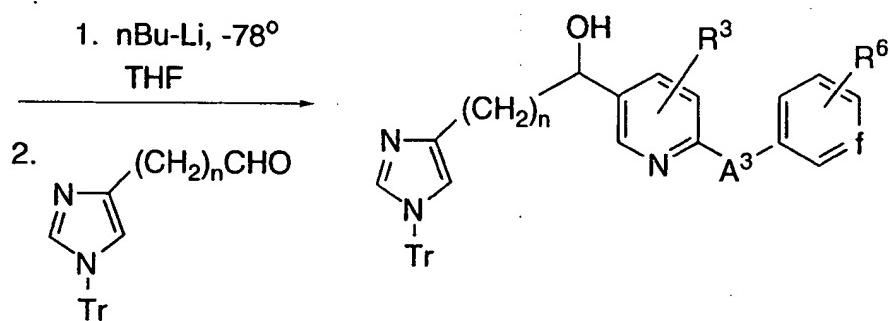
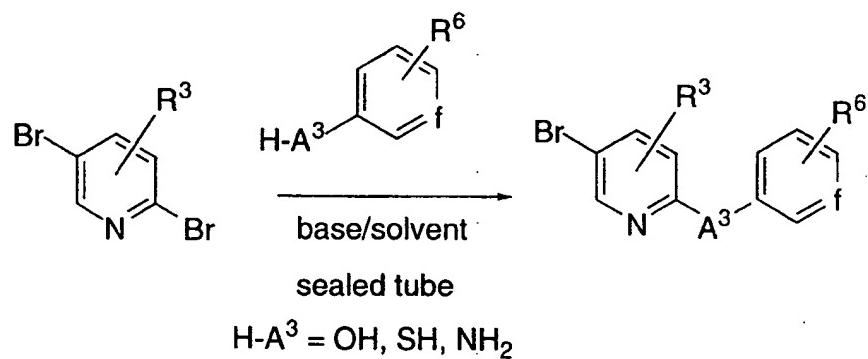


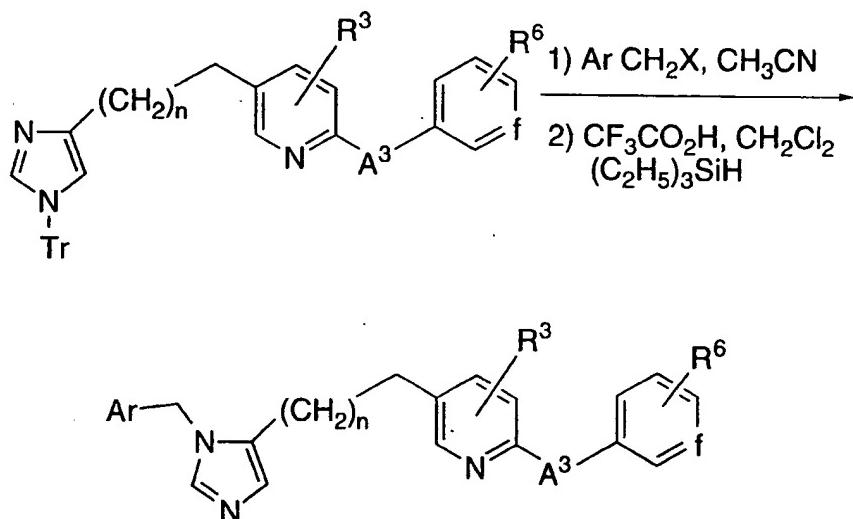
SCHEME 6

SCHEME 7

SCHEME 7 (continued)

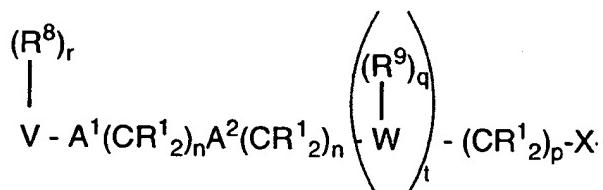
SCHEME 8

SCHEME 9

SCHEME 9 (continued)

5

Schemes 10-18 illustrate reactions wherein the moiety



incorporated in the compounds of the instant invention is represented by other than the substituted imidazole-containing group illustrated in the previous Schemes.

Thus, the intermediates whose synthesis are illustrated in the above Schemes, and other pyridinonecarbocyclic and pyridinone-heterocyclic intermediates obtained commercially or readily synthesized, can be coupled with a variety of aldehydes. The aldehydes can be prepared by standard procedures, such as that described by O. P. Goel, U. Krolls, M. Stier and S. Kesten in Organic Syntheses, 1988, 67, 69-75, from the appropriate amino

acid. Thus, as shown in Scheme 10, a suitably substituted bromopyridine is lithiated and is reacted with an aldehyde to provide the C-alkylated instant compound 27. Compound 27 can be deoxygenated by methods known in the art, such as a catalytic 5 hydrogenation, then deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride to give the final compound 28. The compound 28 may be isolated in the salt form, for example, as a trifluoroacetate, hydrochloride or acetate salt, among others. The product diamine 10 28 can further be selectively protected to obtain 29, which can subsequently be reductively alkylated with a second aldehyde to obtain compound 30. Removal of the protecting group, and conversion to cyclized products such as the dihydroimidazole 31 can be accomplished by literature procedures.

If the bromopyridine reagent is reacted with an aldehyde 15 which also has a protected hydroxyl group, such as 32 in Scheme 11, the protecting groups can be subsequently removed to unmask the hydroxyl group (Schemes 11, 12). The alcohol can be oxidized under standard conditions to *e.g.* an aldehyde, which can then be reacted with a variety of organometallic reagents such as alkyl 20 lithium reagents, to obtain secondary alcohols such as 34. In addition, the fully deprotected amino alcohol 35 can be reductively alkylated (under conditions described previously) with a variety of aldehydes to obtain secondary amines, such as 36 (Scheme 12), or tertiary amines.

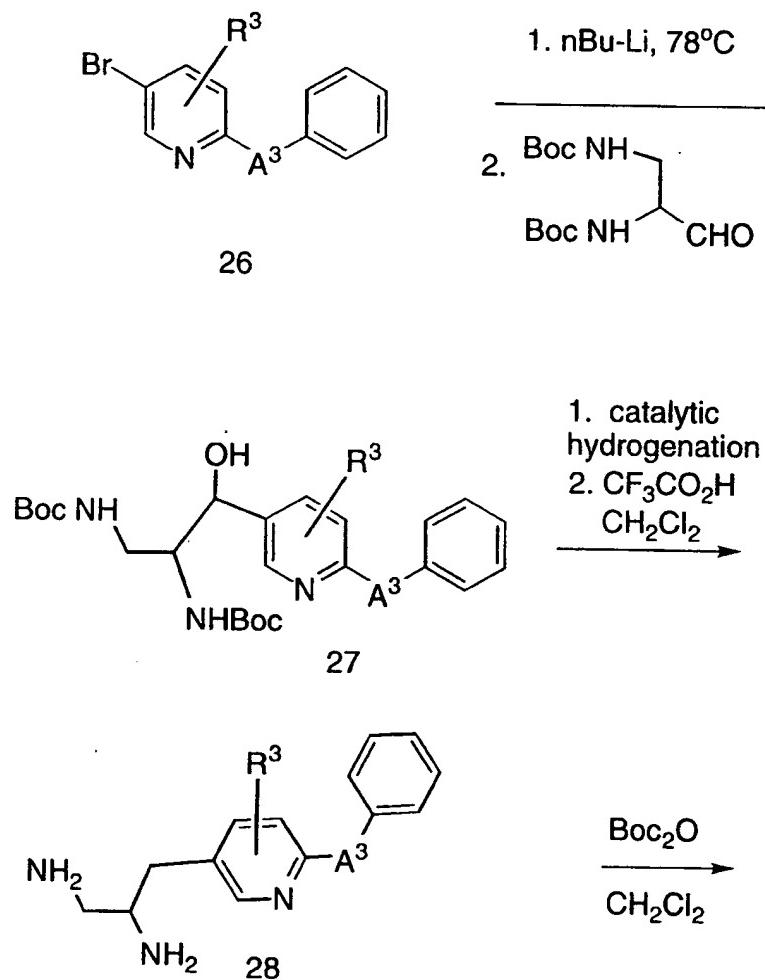
The Boc protected amino alcohol 33 can also be utilized 25 to synthesize 2-aziridinylmethylarylheteroaryl such as 37 (Scheme 13). Treating 33 with 1,1'-sulfonyldiimidazole and sodium hydride in a solvent such as dimethylformamide led to the formation of aziridine 37. The aziridine is reacted with a nucleophile, such as a 30 thiol, in the presence of base to yield the ring-opened product 38.

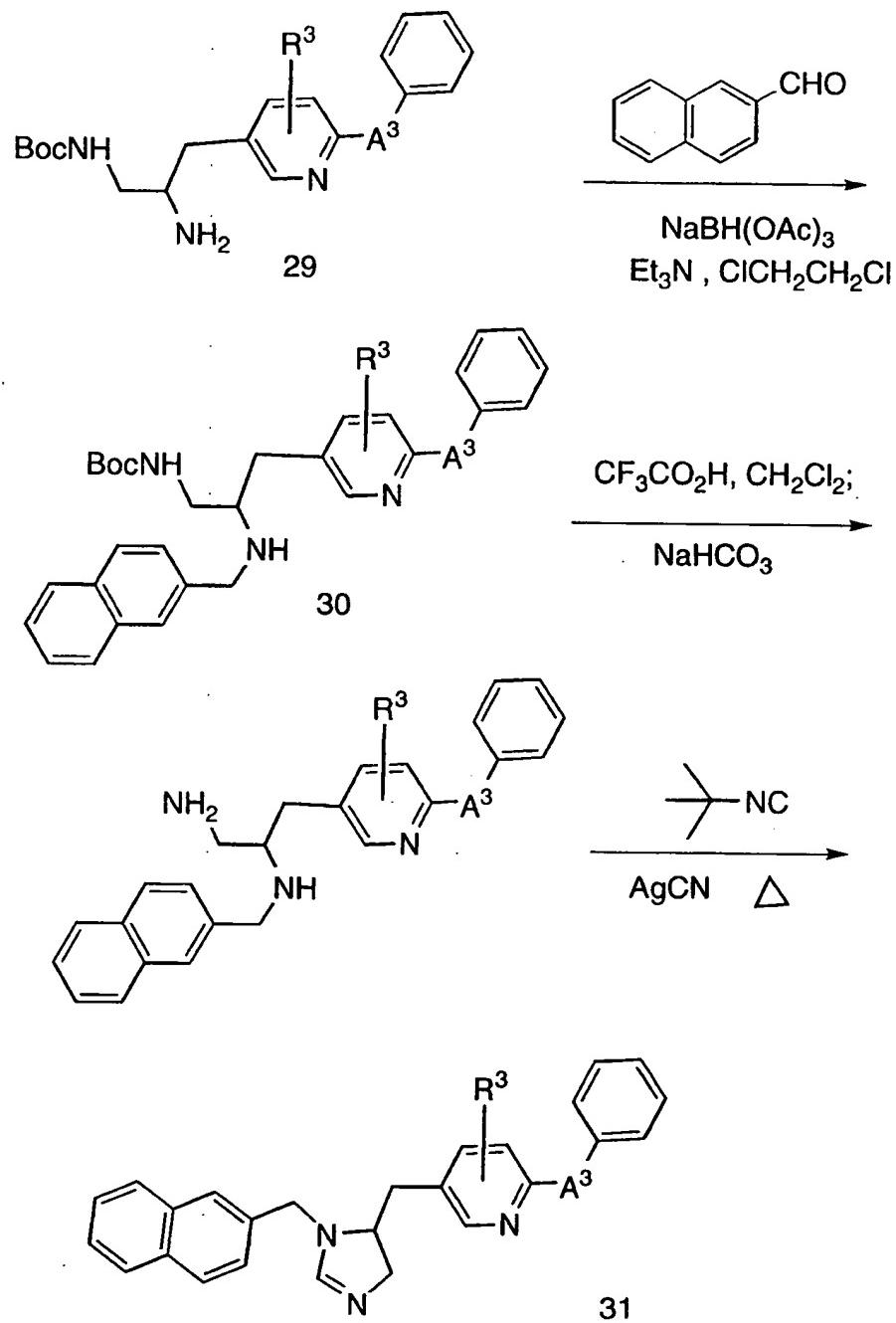
In addition, the arylpyridinone reagent can be reacted with aldehydes derived from amino acids such as O-alkylated tyrosines, according to standard procedures, to obtain compounds such as 40, as shown in Scheme 14. When R' is an aryl group, 40

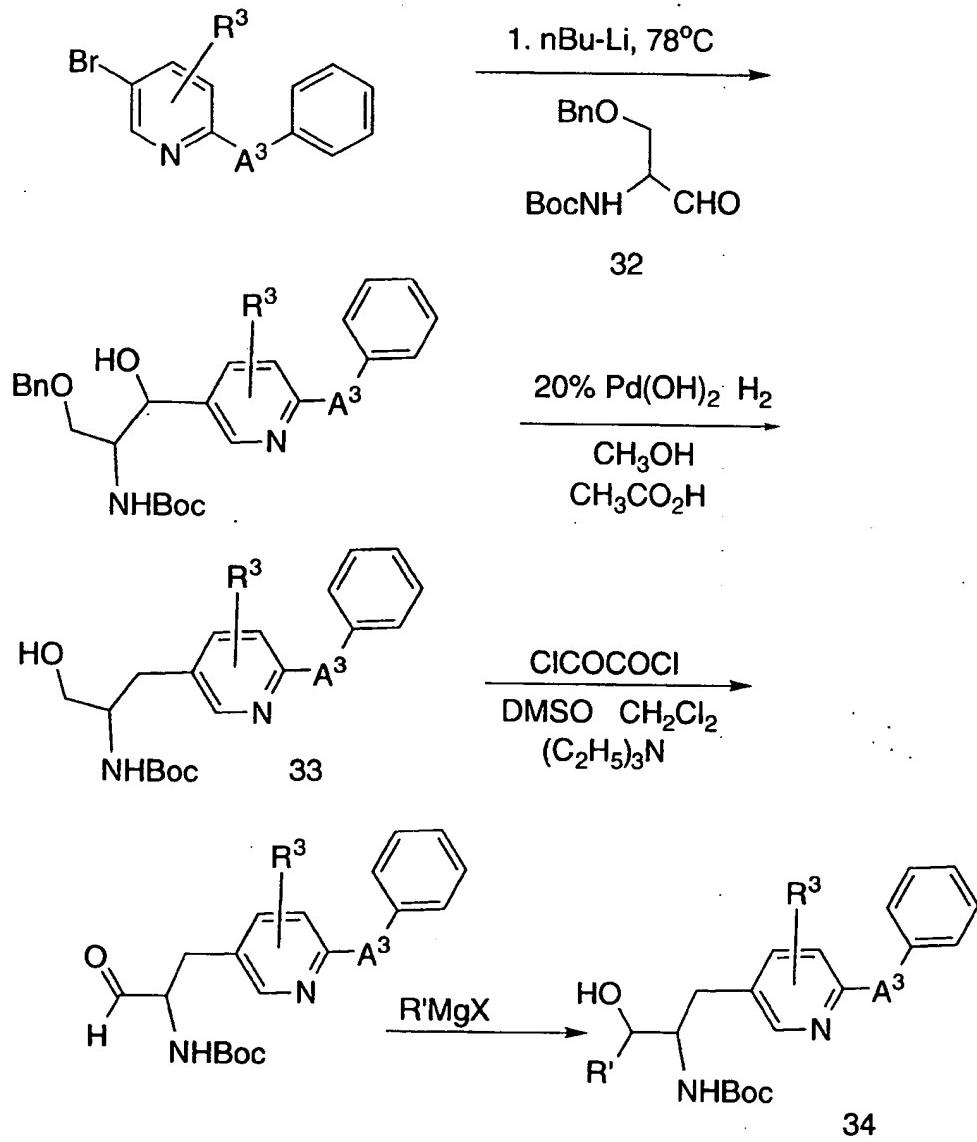
can first be hydrogenated to unmask the phenol, and the amine group deprotected with acid to produce **41**. Alternatively, the amine protecting group in **40** can be removed, and O-alkylated phenolic amines such as **42** produced.

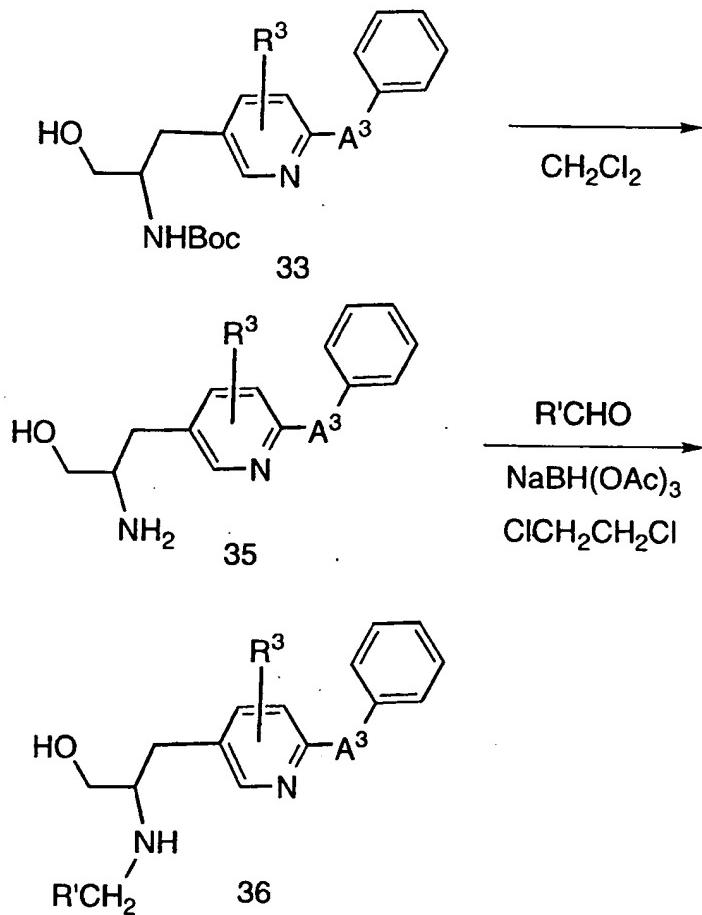
5 Schemes 15-18 illustrate syntheses of suitably substituted aldehydes useful in the syntheses of the instant compounds wherein the variable W is present as a pyridyl moiety. Similar synthetic strategies for preparing alkanols that incorporate other heterocyclic moieties for variable W are also well known in the art.

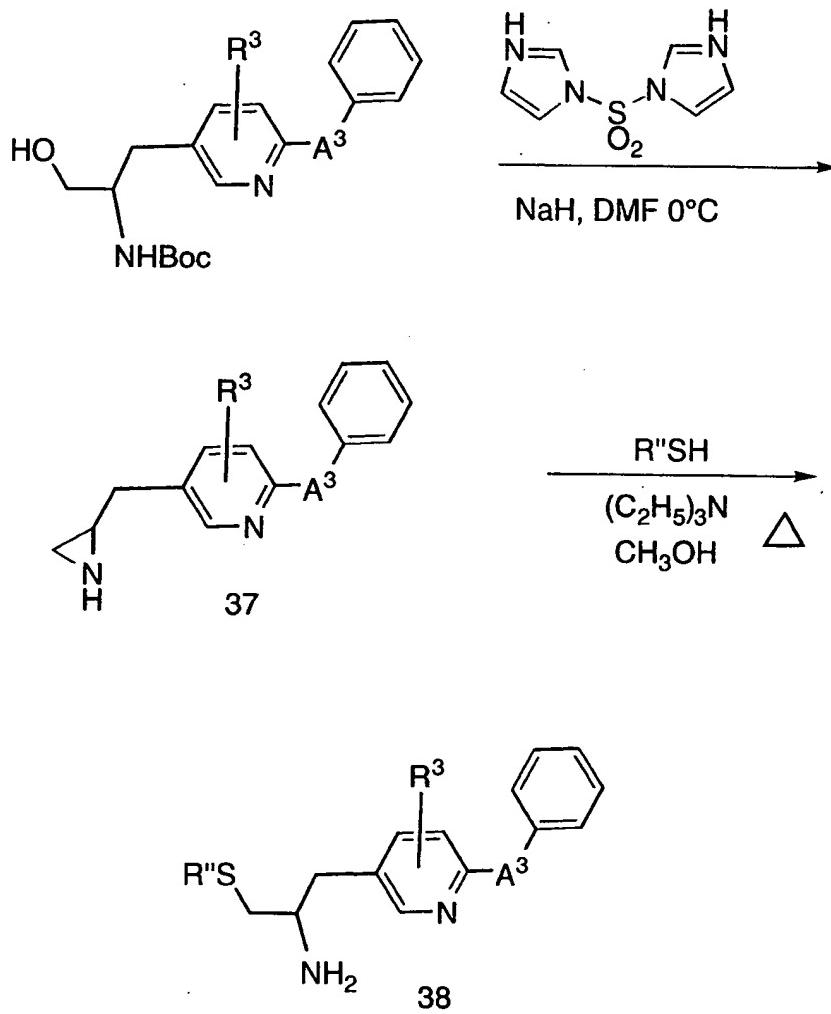
10 Scheme 19 illustrates preparation of substituted aldehydes which incorporate the benzylimidazolyl sidechain. As set forth in Scheme 19, these aldehydes can be reductively aminated with various amines to give the instant compounds.

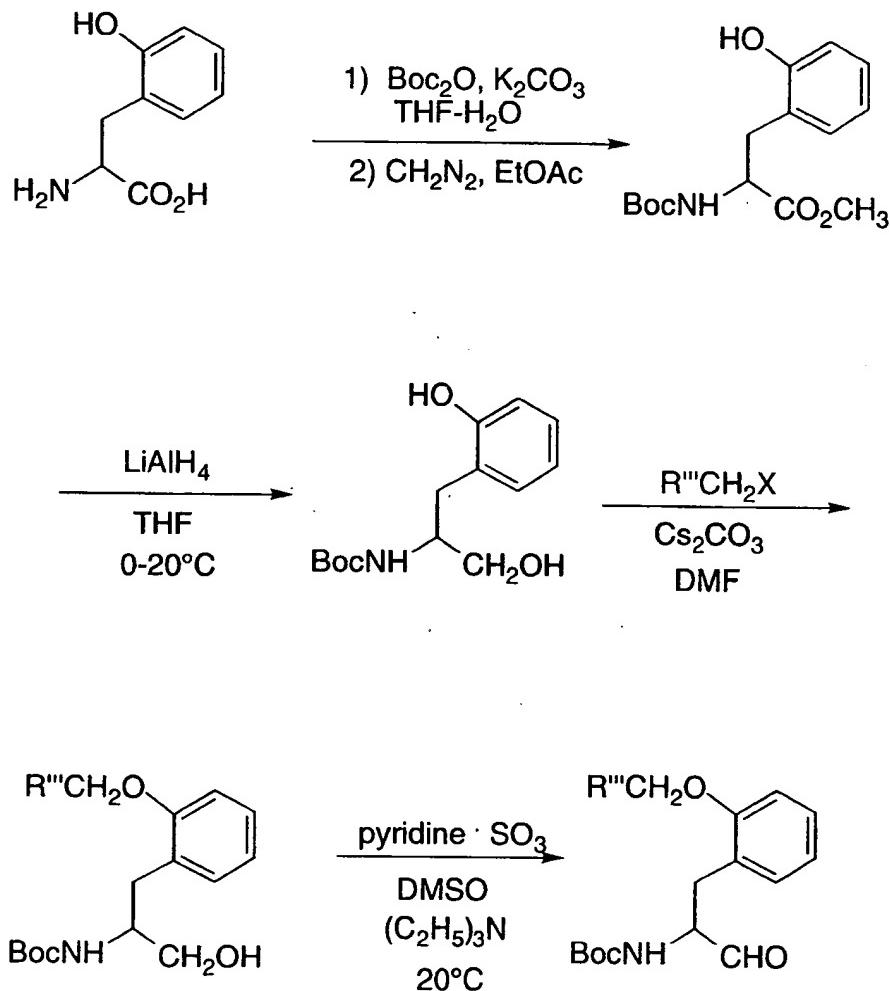
SCHEME 10

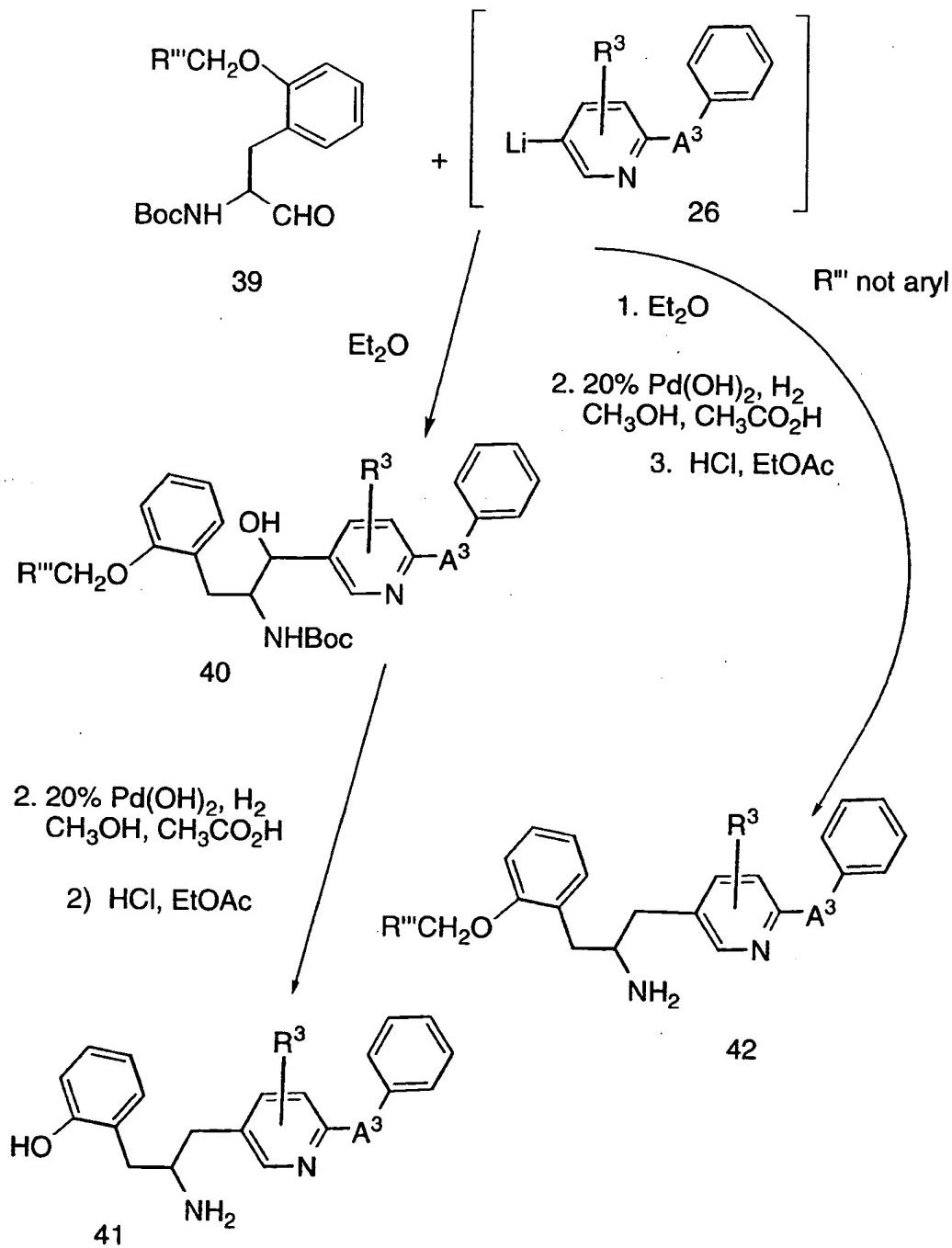
Scheme 10 (continued)

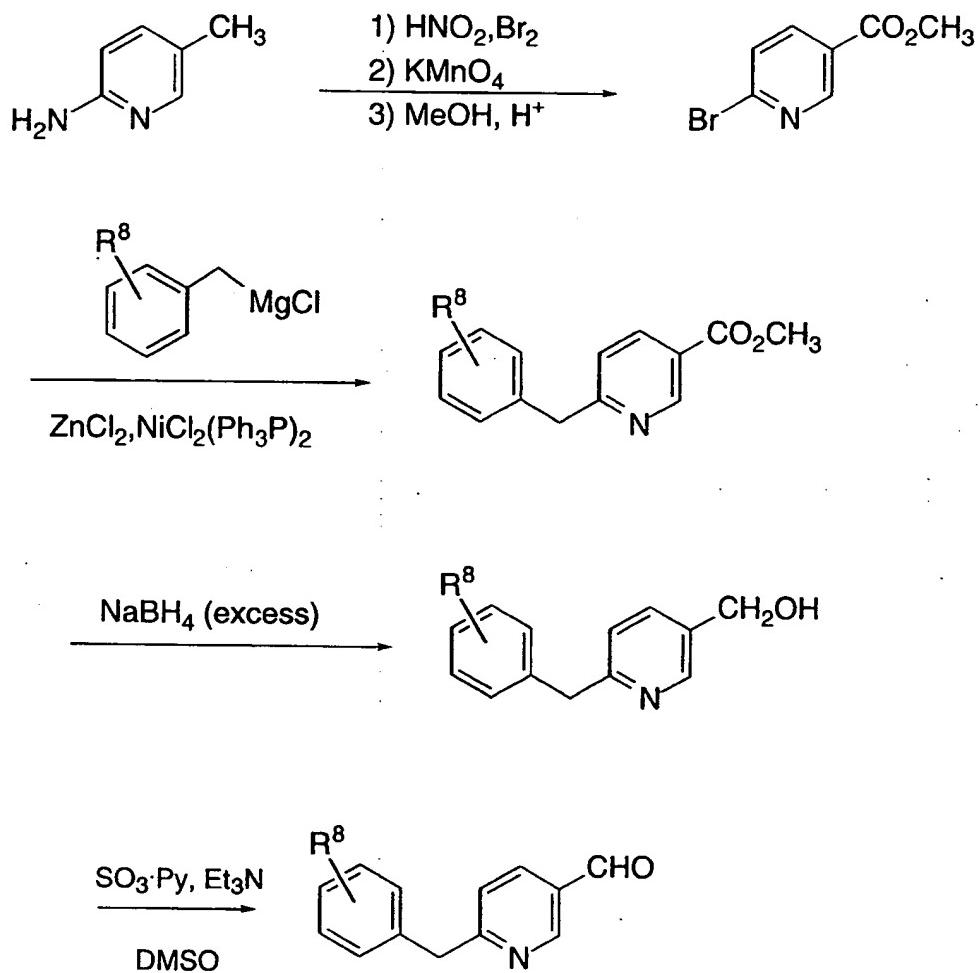
SCHEME 11

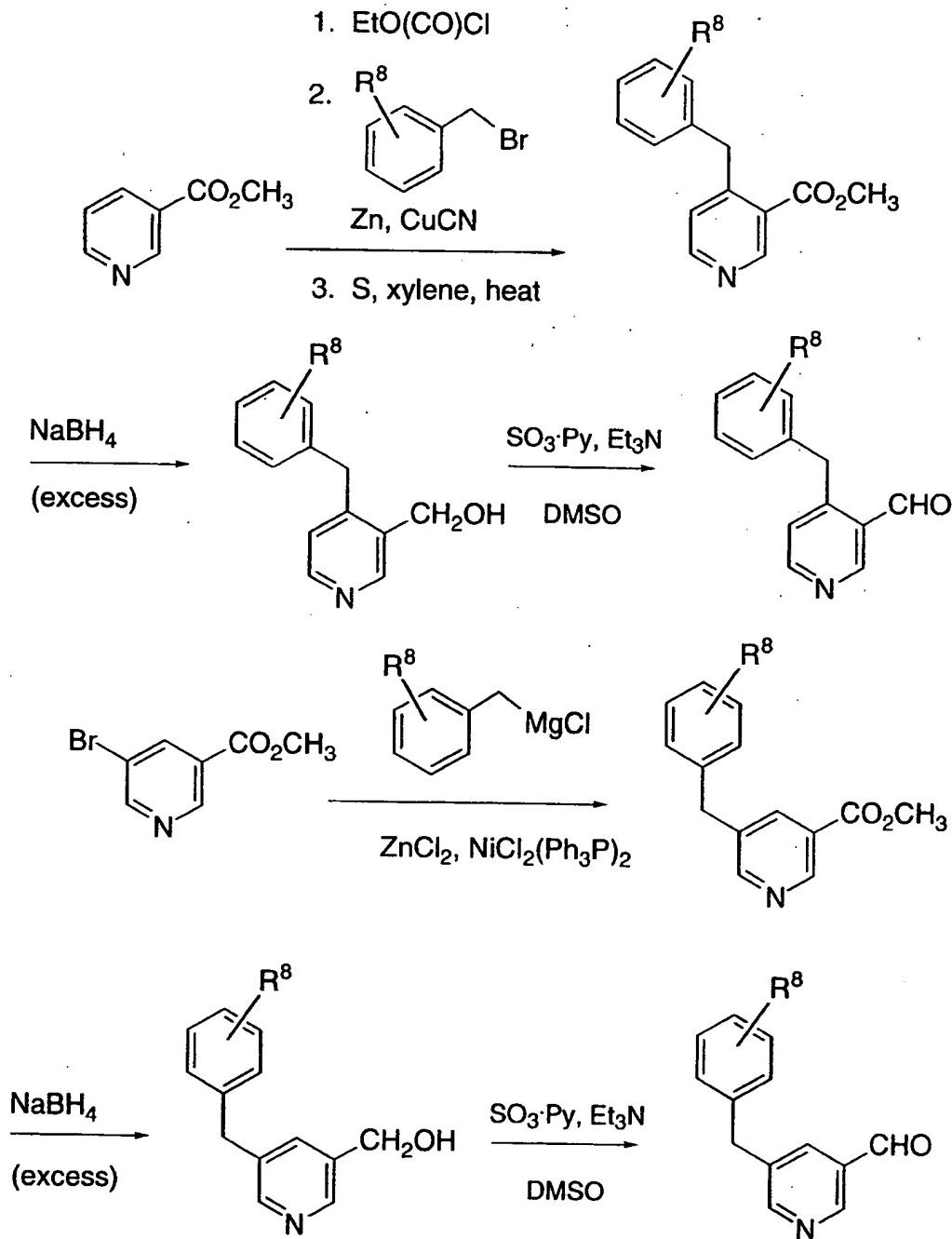
SCHEME 12

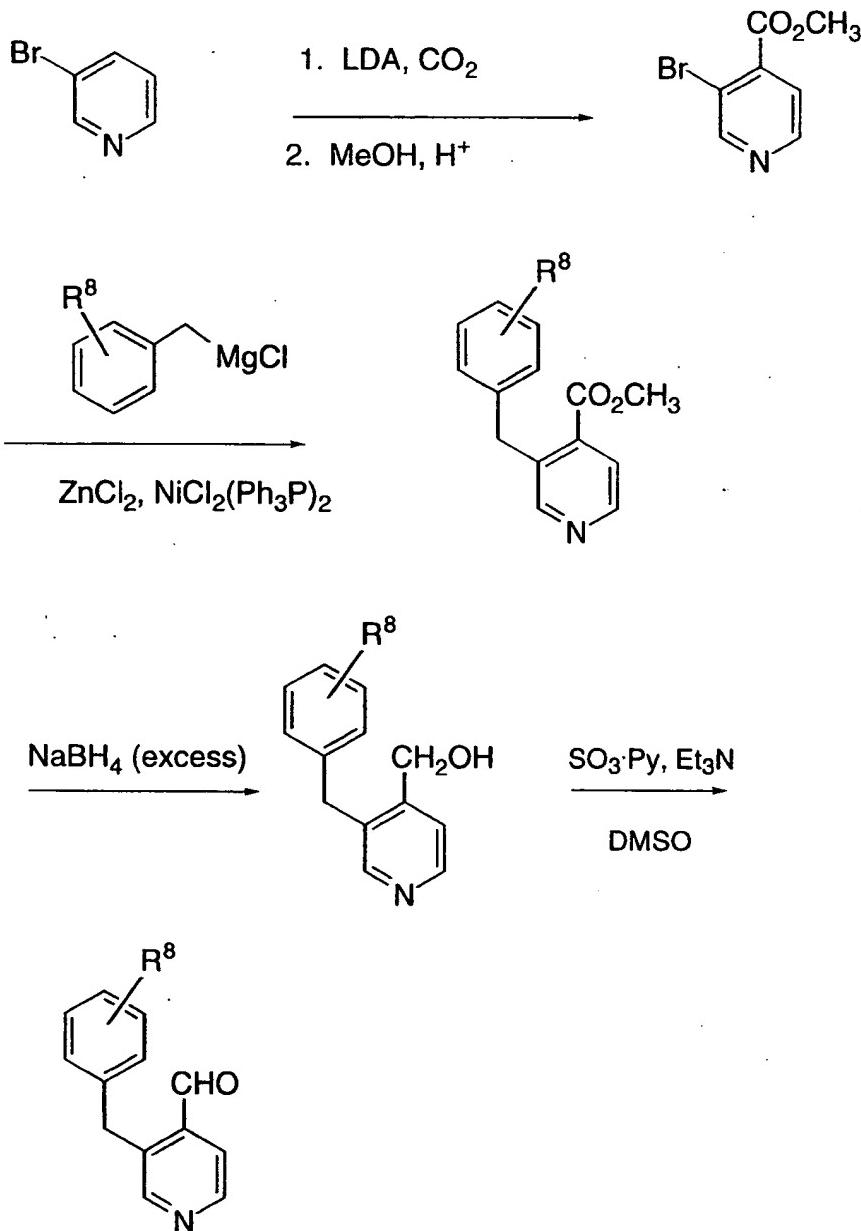
SCHEME 13

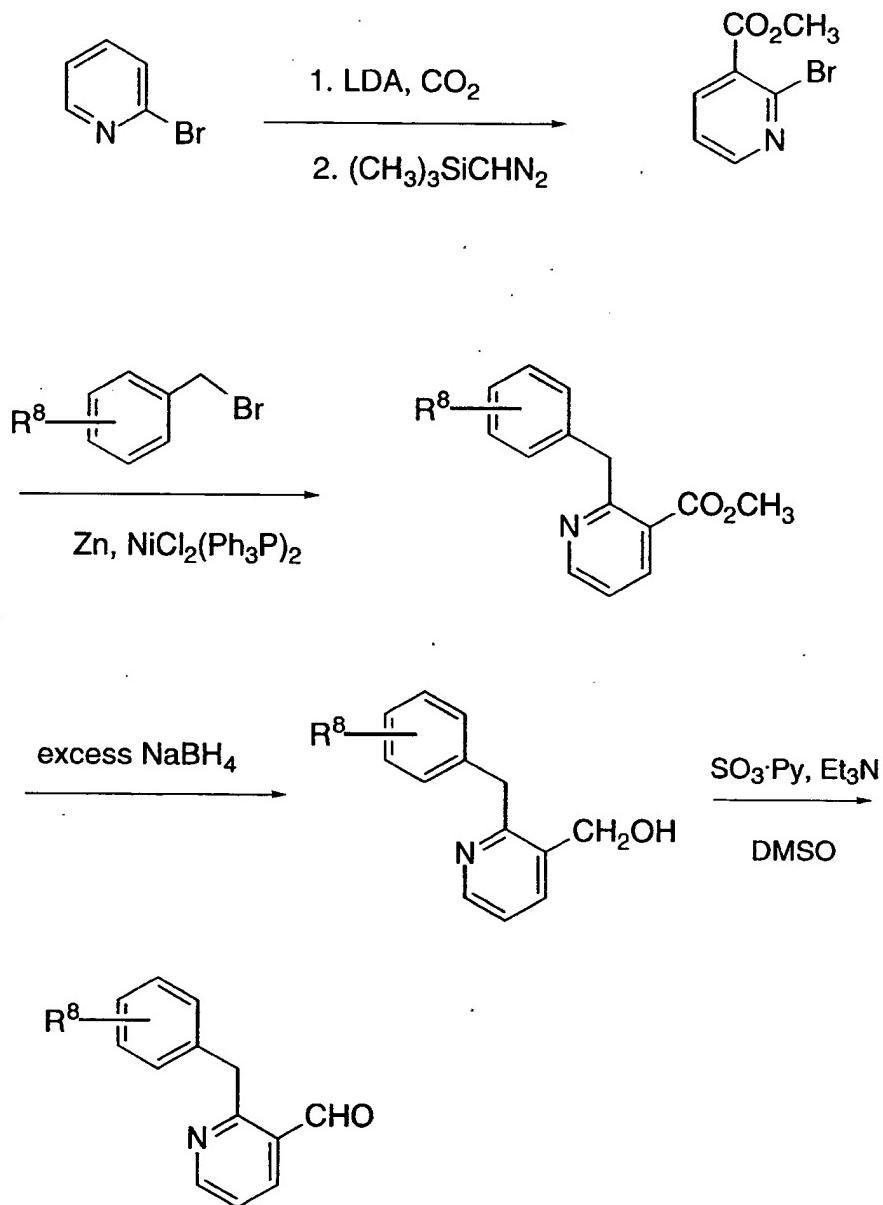
SCHEME 14

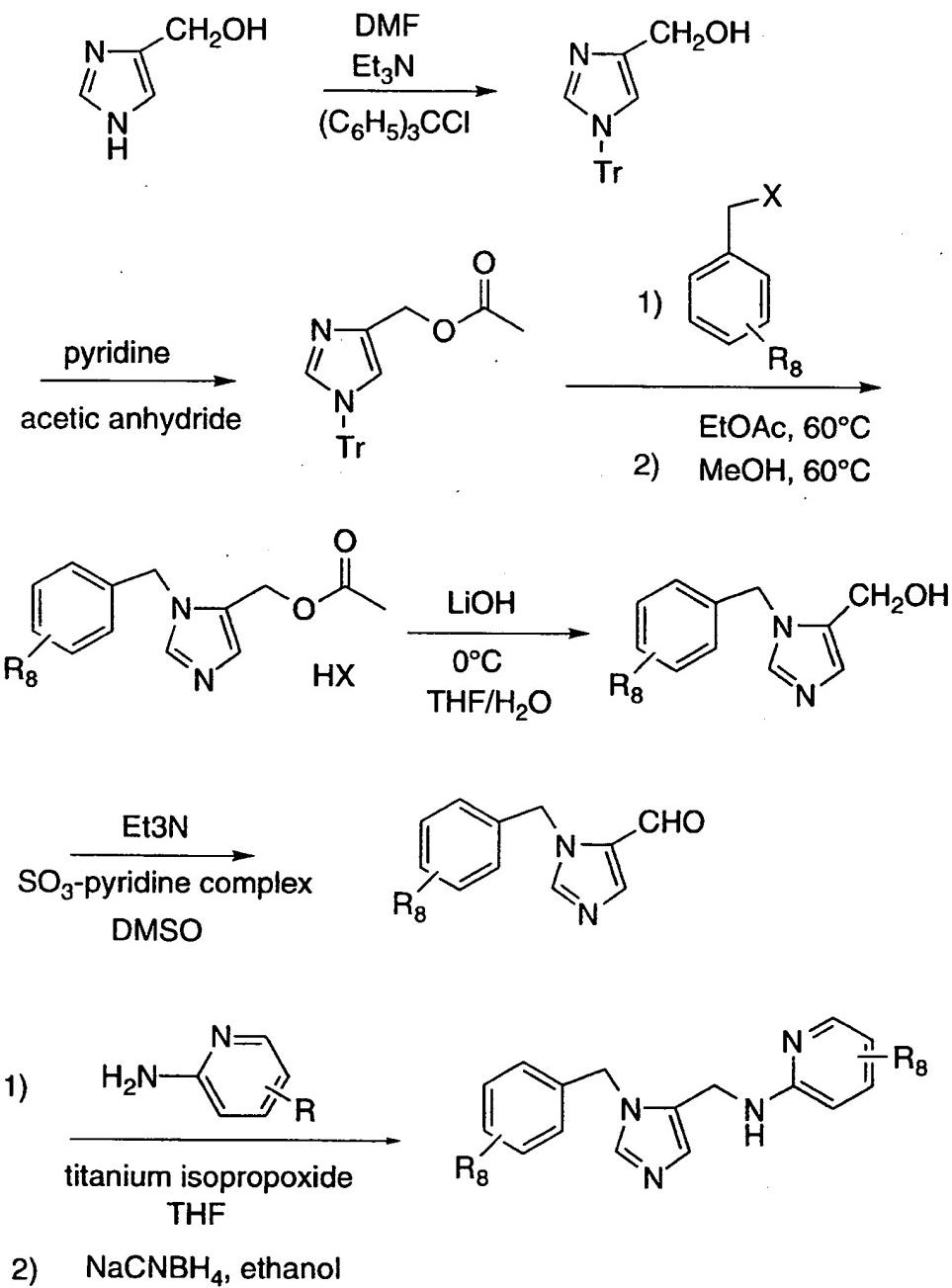
SCHEME 14 (continued)

SCHEME 15

SCHEME 16

SCHEME 17

SCHEME 18

SCHEME 19

In a preferred embodiment of the instant invention the compounds of the invention are selective inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase. A compound is considered a selective inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase, for example, when its *in vitro* farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitory activity, as assessed by the assay described in Example 17, is at least 100 times greater than the *in vitro* activity of the same compound against geranylgeranyl-protein transferase-type I in the assay described in Example 19. Preferably, a selective compound exhibits at least 1000 times greater activity against one of the enzymatic activities when comparing geranylgeranyl-protein transferase-type I inhibition and farnesyl-protein transferase inhibition.

In another preferred embodiment of the instant invention the compounds of the invention are dual inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase and geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I. Such a dual inhibitor will exhibit certain characteristics when assessed in *in vitro* assays, which are dependent on the type of assay employed.

In a SEAP assay, such as described in Examples 21, it is preferred that the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 12μM against K4B-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) against K4B-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells which is more than about 5 times lower than the inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) against Myr-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells. Also more preferably, in a SEAP assay, the dual inhibitor compound has an inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 10 nM against H-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells.

In a GGTase plus anion assay, such as described in Example 19, it is preferred that the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 5 μM against transfer of a geranylgeranyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate comprising a CAA^XG motif by geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I in the presence of a modulating anion. More preferably, the dual inhibitor

compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 1 μM against transfer of a geranylgeranyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate comprising a CAAX^G motif by geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I in the presence of a modulating anion. Preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) in the in vitro assay as described in Example 17 that is less than about 1 μM against transfer of a farnesyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate, comprising a CAAX^F motif, by farnesyl-protein transferase. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 100nM against transfer of a farnesyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate, comprising a CAAX^F motif, by farnesyl-protein transferase. Also preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) in the in vitro assay as described in Example 20, that is less than about 100 nM against the anchorage independent growth of H-ras-transformed mammalian fibroblasts.

The protein or peptide substrate utilized in the instant assay may incorporate any CAAX motif that is geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. The term "CAAX^G" will refer to such motifs that may be geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. It is understood that some of the "CAAX^G" containing protein or peptide substrates may also be farnesylated by farnesyl-protein transferase. In particular such "CAAX^G" motifs include (the corresponding human protein is in parentheses): CVIM (K4B-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 1), CVLL (mutated H-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 2), CVVM (N-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 3), CIIM (K4A-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 4), CLLL (Rap-IA) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 5), CQLL (Rap-IB) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 6), CSIM (SEQ.ID.NO.: 7), CAIM (SEQ.ID.NO.: 8), CKVL (SEQ.ID.NO.: 9) and CLIM (PFX) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 10). Preferably, the CAAX motif is CVIM.

As used herein, the term "CAAX^F" is used to designate a protein or peptide substrate that incorporates four amino acid C-terminus motif that is farnesylated by farnesyl-protein transferase. It is understood that certain of the "CAAX^F" containing protein or peptide substrates may also be geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. In particular

such "CAAX^F" motifs include (the corresponding human protein is in parentheses): CVLS (H-ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 11), CVIM (K4B-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 1) and CVVM (N-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 3).

- The instant compounds are useful as pharmaceutical agents
5 for mammals, especially for humans. These compounds may be administered to patients for use in the treatment of cancer. Examples of the type of cancer which may be treated with the compounds of this invention include, but are not limited to, colorectal carcinoma, exocrine pancreatic carcinoma, myeloid leukemias and neurological tumors.
10 Such tumors may arise by mutations in the ras genes themselves, mutations in the proteins that can regulate Ras activity (i.e., neurofibromin (NF-1), neu, src, ab1, lck, fyn) or by other mechanisms.

- The compounds of the instant invention inhibit prenyl-protein transferase and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras.
15 The instant compounds may also inhibit tumor angiogenesis, thereby affecting the growth of tumors (J. Rak et al. Cancer Research, 55: 4575-4580 (1995)). Such anti-angiogenesis properties of the instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment of certain forms of vision deficit related to retinal vascularization.
20 The compounds of this invention are also useful for inhibiting other proliferative diseases, both benign and malignant, wherein Ras proteins are aberrantly activated as a result of oncogenic mutation in other genes (i.e., the Ras gene itself is not activated by mutation to an oncogenic form) with said inhibition being accomplished
25 by the administration of an effective amount of the compounds of the invention to a mammal in need of such treatment. For example, a component of NF-1 is a benign proliferative disorder.
30 The instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment of certain viral infections, in particular in the treatment of hepatitis delta and related viruses (J.S. Glenn et al. Science, 256:1331-1333 (1992)).

The compounds of the instant invention are also useful in the prevention of restenosis after percutaneous transluminal coronary

angioplasty by inhibiting neointimal formation (C. Indolfi et al. Nature medicine, 1:541-545(1995).

The instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment and prevention of polycystic kidney disease (D.L. Schaffner et al.

5 American Journal of Pathology, 142:1051-1060 (1993) and B. Cowley, Jr. et al.FASEB Journal, 2:A3160 (1988)).

The instant compounds may also be useful for the treatment of fungal infections.

10 The instant compounds may also be useful as inhibitors of proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells and therefore useful in the prevention and therapy of arteriosclerosis and diabetic vascular pathologies.

15 The compounds of this invention may be administered to mammals, preferably humans, either alone or, preferably, in combination with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or diluents, in a pharmaceutical composition, according to standard pharmaceutical practice. The compounds can be administered orally or parenterally, including the intravenous, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal and topical routes of administration.

20 The pharmaceutical compositions containing the active ingredient may be in a form suitable for oral use, for example, as tablets, troches, lozenges, aqueous or oily suspensions, dispersible powders or granules, emulsions, hard or soft capsules, or syrups or elixirs. Compositions intended for oral use may be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions may contain one or more agents selected from the group consisting of sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents and preserving agents in order to provide 25 pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients which are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. These excipients may be for example, inert diluents, such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium

phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, microcrystalline cellulose, sodium crosscarmellose, corn starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, for example starch, gelatin, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone or acacia, and lubricating agents, for example, magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. The tablets may be uncoated or they may be coated by known techniques to mask the unpleasant taste of the drug or delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period. For example, a water soluble taste masking material such as hydroxypropylmethylcellulose or hydroxypropylcellulose, or a time delay material such as ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate buryrate may be employed.

Formulations for oral use may also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water soluble carrier such as polyethyleneglycol or an oil medium, for example peanut oil, liquid paraffin, or olive oil:

Aqueous suspensions contain the active material in admixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions. Such excipients are suspending agents, for example sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, sodium alginate, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone, gum tragacanth and gum acacia; dispersing or wetting agents may be a naturally-occurring phosphatide, for example lecithin, or condensation products of an alkylene oxide with fatty acids, for example polyoxyethylene stearate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with long chain aliphatic alcohols, for example heptadecaethylene-oxycetanol, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and a hexitol such as polyoxyethylene sorbitol monooleate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example polyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The aqueous suspensions may also contain one or more preservatives, for example ethyl, or n-propyl p-hydroxybenzoate, one

or more coloring agents, one or more flavoring agents, and one or more sweetening agents, such as sucrose, saccharin or aspartame.

Oily suspensions may be formulated by suspending the active ingredient in a vegetable oil, for example arachis oil, olive oil, 5 sesame oil or coconut oil, or in mineral oil such as liquid paraffin. The oily suspensions may contain a thickening agent, for example beeswax, hard paraffin or cetyl alcohol. Sweetening agents such as those set forth above, and flavoring agents may be added to provide a palatable oral preparation. These compositions may be preserved by the addition of 10 an anti-oxidant such as butylated hydroxyanisol or alpha-tocopherol.

Dispersible powders and granules suitable for preparation of an aqueous suspension by the addition of water provide the active ingredient in admixture with a dispersing or wetting agent, suspending agent and one or more preservatives. Suitable dispersing or wetting 15 agents and suspending agents are exemplified by those already mentioned above. Additional excipients, for example sweetening, flavoring and coloring agents, may also be present. These compositions may be preserved by the addition of an anti-oxidant such as ascorbic acid.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may also 20 be in the form of an oil-in-water emulsions. The oily phase may be a vegetable oil, for example olive oil or arachis oil, or a mineral oil, for example liquid paraffin or mixtures of these. Suitable emulsifying agents may be naturally-occurring phosphatides, for example soy bean 25 lecithin, and esters or partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example sorbitan monooleate, and condensation products of the said partial esters with ethylene oxide, for example polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The emulsions may also contain sweetening, flavouring agents, preservatives and antioxidants.

Syrups and elixirs may be formulated with sweetening 30 agents, for example glycerol, propylene glycol, sorbitol or sucrose. Such formulations may also contain a demulcent, a preservative, flavoring and coloring agents and antioxidant.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable aqueous solutions. Among the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride solution.

5 The sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable oil-in-water microemulsion where the active ingredient is dissolved in the oily phase. For example, the active ingredient may be first dissolved in a mixture of soybean oil and lecithin. The oil solution then introduced into a water and glycerol mixture and processed to
10 form a microemulation.

15 The injectable solutions or microemulsions may be introduced into a patient's blood-stream by local bolus injection. Alternatively, it may be advantageous to administer the solution or microemulsion in such a way as to maintain a constant circulating concentration of the instant compound. In order to maintain such a constant concentration, a continuous intravenous delivery device may be utilized. An example of such a device is the Deltec CADD-PLUS™ model 5400 intravenous pump.

20 The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable aqueous or oleagenous suspension for intramuscular and subcutaneous administration. This suspension may be formulated according to the known art using those suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents which have been mentioned above. The sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable solution or
25 suspension in a non-toxic parenterally-acceptable diluent or solvent, for example as a solution in 1,3-butane diol. In addition, sterile, fixed oils are conventionally employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such as oleic acid find
30 use in the preparation of injectables.

Compounds of Formula A may also be administered in the form of a suppositories for rectal administration of the drug. These compositions can be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperatures but liquid at

the rectal temperature and will therefore melt in the rectum to release the drug. Such materials include cocoa butter, glycerinated gelatin, hydrogenated vegetable oils, mixtures of polyethylene glycols of various molecular weights and fatty acid esters of polyethylene glycol.

5 For topical use, creams, ointments, jellies, solutions or suspensions, etc., containing the compound of Formula A are employed. (For purposes of this application, topical application shall include mouth washes and gargles.)

10 The compounds for the present invention can be administered in intranasal form via topical use of suitable intranasal vehicles and delivery devices, or via transdermal routes, using those forms of transdermal skin patches well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. To be administered in the form of a transdermal delivery system, the dosage administration will, of course, be continuous rather than intermittent throughout the dosage regimen.

15 As used herein, the term "composition" is intended to encompass a product comprising the specified ingredients in the specific amounts, as well as any product which results, directly or indirectly, from combination of the specific ingredients in the specified amounts.

20 When a compound according to this invention is administered into a human subject, the daily dosage will normally be determined by the prescribing physician with the dosage generally varying according to the age, weight, sex and response of the individual patient, as well as the severity of the patient's symptoms.

25 In one exemplary application, a suitable amount of compound is administered to a mammal undergoing treatment for cancer. Administration occurs in an amount between about 0.1 mg/kg of body weight to about 60 mg/kg of body weight per day, preferably of between 0.5 mg/kg of body weight to about 40 mg/kg of body weight per day.

30 The compounds of the instant invention may also be co-administered with other well known therapeutic agents that are selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is

being treated. For example, the compounds of the instant invention may also be co-administered with other well known cancer therapeutic agents that are selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is being treated. Included in such
5 combinations of therapeutic agents are combinations of the instant farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitors and an antineoplastic agent. It is also understood that such a combination of antineoplastic agent and inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase may be used in conjunction with other methods of treating cancer and/or tumors, including
10 radiation therapy and surgery.

Examples of an antineoplastic agent include, in general, microtubule-stabilizing agents (such as paclitaxel (also known as Taxol®), docetaxel (also known as Taxotere®), epothilone A, epothilone B, desoxyepothilone A, desoxyepothilone B or their
15 derivatives); microtubule-disruptor agents; alkylating agents, anti-metabolites; epidophyllotoxin; an antineoplastic enzyme; a topoisomerase inhibitor; procarbazine; mitoxantrone; platinum coordination complexes; biological response modifiers and growth inhibitors; hormonal/anti-hormonal therapeutic agents and
20 haematopoietic growth factors.

Example classes of antineoplastic agents include, for example, the anthracycline family of drugs, the vinca drugs, the mitomycins, the bleomycins, the cytotoxic nucleosides, the taxanes, the epothilones, discodermolide, the pteridine family of drugs, diynenes and the podophyllotoxins. Particularly useful members of those classes include, for example, doxorubicin, carminomycin, daunorubicin, aminopterin, methotrexate, methopterin, dichloro-methotrexate, mitomycin C, porfiromycin, 5-fluorouracil, 6-mercaptopurine, gemcitabine, cytosine arabinoside, podophyllotoxin or podo-phyllotoxin
25 derivatives such as etoposide, etoposide phosphate or teniposide, melphalan, vinblastine, vincristine, leurosidine, vindesine, leurosine, paclitaxel and the like. Other useful antineoplastic agents include estramustine, cisplatin, carboplatin, cyclophosphamide, bleomycin, tamoxifen, ifosamide, melphalan, hexamethyl melamine, thioteplatin,
30

cytarabin, idatrexate, trimetrexate, dacarbazine, L-asparaginase, camptothecin, CPT-11, topotecan, ara-C, bicalutamide, flutamide, leuprolide, pyridobenzoindole derivatives, interferons and interleukins.

5 The preferred class of antineoplastic agents is the taxanes and the preferred antineoplastic agent is paclitaxel.

Radiation therapy, including x-rays or gamma rays which are delivered from either an externally applied beam or by implantation of tiny radioactive sources, may also be used in combination with the instant inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase alone to treat cancer.

10 Additionally, compounds of the instant invention may also be useful as radiation sensitizers, as described in WO 97/38697, published on October 23, 1997, and herein incorporated by reference.

15 The instant compounds may also be useful in combination with other inhibitors of parts of the signaling pathway that links cell surface growth factor receptors to nuclear signals initiating cellular proliferation. Thus, the instant compounds may be utilized in combination with farnesyl pyrophosphate competitive inhibitors of the activity of farnesyl-protein transferase or in combination with a compound which has Raf antagonist activity. The instant compounds
20 may also be co-administered with compounds that are selective inhibitors of geranylgeranyl protein transferase or farnesyl-protein transferase.

25 In particular, the compounds disclosed in the following patents and publications may be useful as farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor component of the instant composition: U.S. Ser. Nos. 08/254,228 and 08/435,047. Those patents and publications are incorporated herein by reference.

30 In practicing methods of this invention, which comprise administering, simultaneously or sequentially or in any order, two or more of a protein substrate-competitive inhibitor and a farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor, such administration can be orally or parenterally, including intravenous, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal and topical routes of administration. It is preferred that such administration be orally. It is more preferred that such

administration be orally and simultaneously. When the protein substrate-competitive inhibitor and farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor are administered sequentially, the administration of each can be by the same method or by different methods.

5 The instant compounds may also be useful in combination with an integrin antagonist for the treatment of cancer, as described in U.S. Ser. No. 09/055,487, filed April 6, 1998, which is incorporated herein by reference.

10 As used herein the term an integrin antagonist refers to compounds which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to an integrin(s) that is involved in the regulation of angiogenesis, or in the growth and invasiveness of tumor cells. In particular, the term refers to compounds which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to the $\alpha v \beta 3$ integrin, which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to the $\alpha v \beta 5$ integrin, which antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to both the $\alpha v \beta 3$ integrin and the $\alpha v \beta 5$ integrin, or which antagonize, inhibit or counteract the activity of the particular integrin(s) expressed on capillary endothelial cells. The term also refers to antagonists of the $\alpha v \beta 6$, $\alpha v \beta 8$, $\alpha 1 \beta 1$, $\alpha 2 \beta 1$, $\alpha 5 \beta 1$, $\alpha 6 \beta 1$ and $\alpha 6 \beta 4$ integrins. The term also refers to antagonists of any combination of $\alpha v \beta 3$, $\alpha v \beta 5$, $\alpha v \beta 6$, $\alpha v \beta 8$, $\alpha 1 \beta 1$, $\alpha 2 \beta 1$, $\alpha 5 \beta 1$, $\alpha 6 \beta 1$ and $\alpha 6 \beta 4$ integrins. The instant compounds may also be useful with other agents that inhibit angiogenesis and thereby inhibit the growth and invasiveness of tumor cells, including, but not limited to angiostatin and endostatin.

15 Similarly, the instant compounds may be useful in combination with agents that are effective in the treatment and prevention of NF-1, restenosis, polycystic kidney disease, infections of hepatitis delta and related viruses and fungal infections.

20 If formulated as a fixed dose, such combination products employ the combinations of this invention within the dosage range described below and the other pharmaceutically active agent(s) within

its approved dosage range. Combinations of the instant invention may alternatively be used sequentially with known pharmaceutically acceptable agent(s) when a multiple combination formulation is inappropriate.

5 The compounds of the instant invention are also useful as a component in an assay to rapidly determine the presence and quantity of farnesyl-protein transferase (FPTase) in a composition. Thus the composition to be tested may be divided and the two portions contacted with mixtures which comprise a known substrate 10 of FPTase (for example a tetrapeptide having a cysteine at the amine terminus) and farnesyl pyrophosphate and, in one of the mixtures, a compound of the instant invention. After the assay mixtures are incubated for an sufficient period of time, well known in the art, to allow the FPTase to farnesylyate the substrate, the chemical content 15 of the assay mixtures may be determined by well known immunological, radiochemical or chromatographic techniques. Because the compounds of the instant invention are inhibitors of FPTase, absence or quantitative reduction of the amount of substrate in the assay mixture without the compound of the instant invention relative to the 20 presence of the unchanged substrate in the assay containing the instant compound is indicative of the presence of FPTase in the composition to be tested.

It would be readily apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art that such an assay as described above would be useful in identifying 25 tissue samples which contain farnesyl-protein transferase and quantitating the enzyme. Thus, potent inhibitor compounds of the instant invention may be used in an active site titration assay to determine the quantity of enzyme in the sample. A series of samples composed of aliquots of a tissue extract containing an unknown amount of farnesyl- 30 protein transferase, an excess amount of a known substrate of FPTase (for example a tetrapeptide having a cysteine at the amine terminus) and farnesyl pyrophosphate are incubated for an appropriate period of time in the presence of varying concentrations of a compound of the instant invention. The concentration of a sufficiently potent inhibitor (i.e., one

that has a K_i substantially smaller than the concentration of enzyme in the assay vessel) required to inhibit the enzymatic activity of the sample by 50% is approximately equal to half of the concentration of the enzyme in that particular sample.

5

EXAMPLES

Examples provided are intended to assist in a further understanding of the invention. Particular materials employed, species and conditions are intended to be further illustrative of the invention and not limitative of the reasonable scope thereof.

EXAMPLE 1

15 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-
imidazole

Step 1: 1-Trityl-4-(4-cyanobenzyl)imidazole

To an oven dried 500 ml flask was added Zn (92mmol, 20 5.96g) and then 45 mL of distilled THF via syringe. To this well stirred mixture was added 1,2-dibromoethane (9.2 mmol, 1.72g) via pipet. This mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 3 hr and then a solution of p-cyanobenzylbromide (59.5 mmol, 11.68g) in THF (50mL) was added via addition funnel over 20 minutes. The resulting mixture 25 was stirred at ambient temperature for 6 hr. Then a mixture of 1-trityl-4-iodoimidazole (45.8mmol, 20g) and bis-triphenylphosphine-dichloronickel (4.6 mmol, 3.0g) was added. This was stirred at ambient temperature for 36 hr. A saturated ammonium chloride solution (125mL) was added. Stirring was continued for 3 hr and then 1L 30 of chloroform was added to this mixture. The chloroform layer was drawn off, washed with dilute sodium bicarbonate then saturated sodium chloride. Dried with sodium sulfate and evaporated to a thick oil. Purified on a silica gel column eluted with chloroform to provide the

title compound. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): 4.0ppm (s, 2H); 7.1-7.6ppm (20H); 6.6ppm(s, 1H).

Step 2: 2-bromo-5-bromomethyl pyridine

5 To a flask was charged 2-bromo-5-methylpyridine (34.9mmol, 6.0g), N-bromosuccinimide (38.4 mmol, 6.83g), benzoyl peroxide (3.49mmol, 0.85g) and carbon tetrachloride (60mL). This solution was refluxed for 6 hr, cooled to ambient temperature and purified on a silica gel column. Eluted with ethyl acetate: hexane (1:9)
10 to provide the title compound. FAB MS: calc: 250.9 found: 251.9.
 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): 4.4ppm (s, 2H); 7.5ppm (d, 1H); 7.6ppm (d, 1H); 8.4ppm (s, 1H).

Step 3: 5-(4-Cyanobenzyl)-1-(2-bromopyrid-5-ylmethyl)imidazole

15 To a flask was charged 1-trityl -4-p-cyanobenzyl imidazole (2.77mmol, 1.18g) from Step 1 and 2-bromo-5-bromomethyl pyridine (2.77mmol, 0.67g) from Step 2 in DMF (10mL) and the mixture heated at 100°C for 6 hr. The DMF was then removed in vacuo and the residue was triturated with ethyl ether. The ethyl ether was then decanted off
20 and replaced with methanol (20mL).This solution was then refluxed for 4 hr, cooled to ambient temperature and purified on a C_{18} preperative hplc column to provide the title compound. High resolution FAB-MS: calc; 353.040183 found; 353.040183. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD): 4.2ppm (s, 2H); 5.4ppm (s, 2H); 7.2 and 7.6ppm (d, 2H); 8.1ppm (s, 1H); 9.1ppm (s, 1H).

Step 4: 5-(4'-cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''methylphenylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole

30 The compound from Step 3 (0.28 mmol, 0.164g), 3-methyl thiophenol (0.85 mmol, 0.106g) and triethylamine (3.59mmol, 0.36g) were placed in an N_2 purged sealed tube. This was heated at 105°C for 15 hr. The residue was dissolved in methanol and purified on a C_{18} preperative hplc column. Lyophilized from dioxane/HCl to provide

the title compound. FAB-MS: calc: 396.4 found: 397.2 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD): 2.4ppm (s, 3H); 4.2ppm (s, 2H); 5.4ppm (s, 2H); 7.2-7.6ppm (10H); 8.1ppm (s, 1H); 9.1ppm (s, 1H).

5

EXAMPLE 2

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylphenoxy)-pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole

- 10 The compound from Example 1 Step 3 (0.11g 0.20mmol), m-cresol (0.064g, 0.59mmol) and sodium hydride (60% dispersion in oil, 4.0 equiv, 0.032g) were suspended in DMF (0.5mL) in an N_2 purged sealed tube and heated at 110°C for 24hr. The residue was dissolved in methanol and purified on a C_{18} preperative hplc column.
- 15 Lyophilized from dioxane/HCl to provide the title compound. FAB-MS: calc: 380.4 found: 381.0. 2 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD): 2.4ppm (s, 3H); 4.2ppm (s, 2H); 5.4ppm (s, 2H); 6.8-7.6ppm (11H); 7.9 ppm (s, 1H); 9.1ppm (s,1H).

20

EXAMPLE 3

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio) pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole

- 25 The compound from Example 1 Step 3 (0.26 mmol, 0.090g), 3-chloro phenol (0.76 mmol, 0.11g) and triethylamine (0.726g) were placed in an N_2 purged sealed tube. This was heated at 105°C for 4 hr. The residue was dissolved in methanol and purified on a C_{18} preperative hplc column. Lyophilized from dioxane/HCl to provide the title compound. FAB-MS: calc: 416.9 found:417.1. 2 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD): 4.2ppm (s, 2H); 5.4ppm (s, 2H); 6.9ppm (d, 1H); 7.2-7.6ppm (m, 10H); 8.1ppm (s, 1H); 9.1ppm (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 45-(4'-cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(cyclohexylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole

The compound from Example 1, Step 3 (0.16g 0.45mmol),
5 cyclohexyl mercaptan (0.16g, 1.35mmol) and sodium hydride (60% dispersion in oil, 4.0 equiv, 0.032g) were suspended in DMF (0.5mL) in an N₂ purged sealed tube and heated at 110°C for 4hr. The residue was dissolved in methanol and purified on a C₁₈ preparative hplc column. Lyophilized from dioxane/HCl to provide the title compound. FAB-MS:
10 calc: 389 found: 389. ¹H-NMR (CD₃OD): 1.4-2.1ppm (10H); 3.8ppm (1H); 4.2ppm (2H); 5.45ppm (2H); 7.2-7.6ppm (7H); 8.2ppm (1H); 9.1ppm (1H).

EXAMPLE 5

15

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylthio)pyrid-4-ylmethyl]-imidazoleStep1: 2-Bromo-4-bromomethyl pyridine

Following the procedure of Adams et.al. (J. Am. Chem. Soc., 76, 3168 (1954)) 2-bromo-4-methylpyridine was obtained from 2-amino-4-methylpyridine. ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): 2.3ppm (s, 3H); 7.05ppm (d, 1H); 7.3ppm (s, 1H); 8.2ppm (s, 1H).

Step 2: 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-(2-bromo-4-pyridylmethyl)imidazole

25 Following the procedure in Example 1, Step 2 the product was obtained from 2-bromo-4-methylpyridine. FAB-MS: calc: 249 found: 250. ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃): 4.4ppm (s, 2H); 7.2ppm (d, 1H); 7.5ppm (s, 1H); 8.4ppm (d, 1H).

30 Step 3: 5-(4'-cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-bromopyrid-4-ylmethyl]imidazole

Following the procedure in Example 1, Step 3 1-trityl-4-p-cyanobenzyl imidazole and 2-bromo-4-bromomethyl pyridine were reacted to give the product as a free base solid after washing the preparative hplc purified material with Na₂CO₃. FAB-MS: calc: 353

found:353. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): 3.8ppm (s, 2H); 4.9ppm (s, 2H); 6.8ppm (d, 1H); 6.9-7.6 (7H); 8.3ppm (d, 1H).

Step 4: 5-(4'-cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''methylphenylthio)4-pyridylmethyl]imidazole

Following the procedure in Example 1, Step 4, 5-(4'-cyanophenyl)-1-[2-bromopyrid-4-ylmethyl]imidazole and 3-methyl thiophenol were reacted and the product was obtained. FAB-MS: calc: 396.5 found: 397.1. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD): 2.4ppm (s, 3H); 4.05ppm(s, 2H); 5.5ppm (s, 2H); 6.3ppm (s, 1H); 7.0ppm (d,1H); 7.2-7.6ppm (9H); 8.35ppm (d, 1H); 9.02ppm (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 6

15 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(cyclohexylamino)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole hydrochloride

Step 1: 2- cyclohexylamino-5-pyridine carboxylic acid

2-Chloro-5-pyridinecarboxylicacid ethylester (g,,5.0 mMol) was treated with 10 mMol cyclohexylamine and the mixture heated for 6 hours at 100° in a sealed tube. Preparative HPLC of the crude product gave the title compound along with equal amounts of the N-cyclohexylamide of the starting ester.

25 Step 2: (2- cyclohexylamino-5-pyridyl)methanol

The product from Step 1 was reduced with 3 equivalents of LiAlH_4 in THF for 4 hours at room temperature. Lithium salts were precipitatedwith water and aqueous NaOH. The THF layer was filtered through FILTER -AID and the filtrate conc in vac to give 2-cyclohexylamino-5-pyridine methanol.

Step 3: 5-(4'-cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(cyclohexylamino)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole hydrochloride

The product from Step 2 was treated with 1.1 equivalent of triphenylphosphine in refluxing CBr. The crude 2-cyclohexylamino-5-

pyridylmethyl bromide was purified by silica gel chromatography and reacted with 1-trityl-4-(4-cyanobenzyl)imidazole from Example 1, Step 1 for 12 hours at 60° in dry acetonitrile. The mixture was concentrated and the residue boiled 12 hours in methanol. The methanol was
5 concentrated and the residue purified by preparative HPLC to give the trifluoroacetic salt of the title compound. This was converted to the HCl salt by lyophilization from dioxane containing 1 equivalent of HCl.

EXAMPLE 7

10

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole -S-oxide hydrochloride.

The product of Example 1 was oxidized with 1.1 equivalent of 3-chloroperbenzoic acid in THF at -60° to room temperature.
15 Preparative HPLC followed by lyophilization from dioxane HCl gave pure title compound.

EXAMPLE 8

20 Preparation of 2-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -6-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine

Step A: 4-Cyanobenzyl histamine
N^G-Pivaloyloxymethyl-N^A-phthaloylhystamine (4.55 g, 25 12.8 mmol) prepared as previously described (J. C. Emmett, F. H. Holloway, and J. L. Turner, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1*, 1341, (1979)) and α-Bromo-p-tolunitrile (3.77 g, 19.2 mmol) were dissolved in acetonitrile (70 mL) and heated at 55°C for 4 h, cooled to room temperature, and filtered to remove the white solid. The acetonitrile (30 mL) was concentrated to 1/2 its volume under reduced pressure and the solution was heated at 55°C overnight. The solution was cooled and filtered to give a white solid. The solids were combined, dried, and used without further purification.
30 1-Pivaloyloxymethyl-3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-4-(2-phthalimidoethyl) imidazolium bromide (1.00 g, 1.81 mmol) was
35

- dissolved in ethanol (50 mL), treated with hydrazine (0.287 mL, 9.06 mmol), and heated at reflux for 16 h. Dimethyl phthalate (2.22 mL, 13.57 mmol) was added and reflux was continued for 6 h. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice-H₂O bath, the solid precipitate filtered off,
- 5 the filtrate concentrated to dryness, and the residue chromatographed (SiO₂, CH₂Cl₂(NH₄OH): 3 -8% CH₃OH) to give the title compound.
- 1H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 7.76 (s, 1H), 7.74 (d, 2H, J = 8 Hz), 7.27 (d, 2H, J = 8 Hz), 6.88 (s, 1H), 5.35 (s, 2H), 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 6 Hz), 2.60 (t, 2 H, J = 6 Hz).
- 10
- Step B: 2-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -6-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine 6-(3-Trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine-2-carboxylic acid (0.05 g, 0.146 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2 mL) and treated
- 15 with EDC (0.0338 g, 0.176 mmol), HOBT (0.0238 g, 0.176 mmol), 4-cyanobenzyl histamine (0.0399 g, 0.176 mmol) and N-methylmorpholine (0.048 mL, 0.438 mmol) and stirred at ambient temperature for 18 hr. Purification of the crude reaction by preparative RP HPLC on a Vydac column gave the title compound.
- 20 Anal. calcd for C₂₆H₂₀N₅O₂F₃ • 1.35 CF₃CO₂H • 0.5 H₂O:
C, 52.67; H, 3.44; N, 10.70;
Found: C, 52.67; H, 3.42; N, 10.76.
FAB MS 492 (M+1).
- 25 Using the procedure described above, but substituting the requisite acids in Step B, the following compounds were prepared:
3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -6-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine
Anal. calcd for C₂₆H₂₀N₅O₂F₃ • 0.3 H₂O:
C, 62.84; H, 4.18; N, 14.10;
Found: C, 62.80; H, 4.09; N, 13.97.
FAB MS 492 (M+1).
- 30

3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -5-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine

Anal. calcd for C₂₆H₂₀N₅O₂F₃ • 0.15 CH₂Cl₂:
 C, 62.29; H, 4.06; N, 13.89;
 5 Found: C, 62.68; H, 4.44; N, 13.51.
 FAB MS 492 (M+1).

3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -5-(3-trifluoromethylbenzyloxy)pyridine

10 Anal. calcd for C₂₇H₂₂N₅O₂F₃ • 0.20 H₂O:
 C, 63.69; H, 4.44; N, 13.76;
 Found: C, 63.70; H, 4.48; N, 13.67.
 FAB MS 506 (M+1).

15 EXAMPLE 9

Preparation of 5-chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide

20 5-Chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic acid (0.10 g, 0.335 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10 mL) and treated with EDC (0.077 g, 0.402 mmol), HOBT (0.054 g, 0.402 mmol), 4-cyanobenzyl histamine (0.079 g, 0.352 mmol) and NMM (0.11 mL, 1.00 mmol) and stirred at ambient temperature for 18 hr.
 25 The reaction mixture was concentrated to remove the DMF, then partitioned between EtOAc and aq saturated NaHCO₃ solution, the organic layer separated, washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The title compound was obtained upon purification by RP HPLC on a PrepPak column eluting with an acetonitrile/H₂O/TFA gradient followed
 30 by neutralization with NaHCO₃ and extraction.
 Anal. calcd for C₂₆H₂₁N₅O₂Cl₂ • 0.20 H₂O:
 C, 61.23; H, 4.23; N, 13.73;
 Found: C, 61.19; H, 4.20; N, 13.59.
 FAB MS 506 (M+1).

Using the procedure described above, but substituting the requisite acids, the following compounds were prepared:

- 1-(3-Chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic acid
5 {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
Anal. calcd for C₂₆H₂₂N₅O₂Cl • 0.45 H₂O:
C, 65.05; H, 4.81; N, 14.59;
Found: C, 65.12; H, 4.84; N, 14.35.
FAB MS 472 (M+1).
- 10 1-(3-Trifluoromethylbenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
Anal. calcd for C₂₇H₂₂N₅O₂F₃ • 0.40 H₂O:
C, 63.25; H, 4.48; N, 13.66;
15 Found: C, 63.30; H, 4.26; N, 13.32.
FAB MS 506 (M+1).
- 1-(3-Chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
20 Anal. calcd for C₂₆H₂₂N₅O₂Cl • 0.30H₂O:
C, 65.41; H, 4.77; N, 14.67;
Found: C, 65.42; H, 4.64; N, 14.42.
FAB MS 472 (M+1).
- 25 5-Chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
Anal. calcd for C₂₆H₂₁N₅O₂Cl₂ • 0.75 H₂O:
C, 60.06; H, 4.36; N, 13.47;
Found: C, 60.08; H, 4.11; N, 13.32.
- 30 FAB MS 506 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 10

Preparation of 6-[N-(3-Chlorobenzyl) carbamoyl]- 4-ethoxy-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide

5

Step A: Diethyl 4-hydroxy-2,6-pyridine dicarboxylate

Chelidamic acid (15.1 g, 0.825 mol), abs EtOH (48 mL) and concd H₂SO₄ (0.9 mL) were combined and heated at reflux for 8 hr. The reaction mixture was concentrated to remove the EtOH, and 10 partitioned between EtOAc and H₂O. After numerous extractions, concentration of the organic layer, the title compound was obtained after RP HPLC.

15

Step B: Mono methyl ester of 4-ethoxy-2,6-pyridine dicarboxylate

The diethyl ester (0.300 g, 1.12 mmol) was dissolved in THF (4 mL) and treated with LiOH (0.052 g, 1.23 mmol) in H₂O/CH₃OH (24 mL) and stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The title compound was obtained after preparative RP HPLC. FAB MS 226 (M+1).

20

Step C: 4-Ethoxy-6-methoxycarbonyl-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide

The mono methyl ester of 4-ethoxy-2,6-pyridine dicarboxylate (0.098 g, 0.435 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (1 mL) and treated with EDC (0.108 g, 0.503 mmol), HOBT (0.062 g, 0.456 mmol), 4-cyanobenzylhistamine (0.098 g, 0.435 mmol) and the pH adjusted to 7.5 with NMM. After stirring overnight at ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated to remove the DMF, then chromatographed on RP HPLC to give the title compound as the TFA salt. FAB MS 434 (M+1).

- Step D: 4-Ethoxy-6-carboxyl-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
4-Ethoxy-6-methoxycarbonyl-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide (0.249 g, 0.376 mmol) was dissolved in THF (2 mL) and treated with LiOH (0.052 g, 1.24 mmol) in CH₃OH (4 mL)- H₂O (2 mL) with stirring at ambient temperature for 5 hr. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and used in the next step.
- 10 Step E: 6-[N-(3-Chlorobenzyl) carbamoyl]- 4-ethoxy-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
4-Ethoxy-6-carboxyl-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide (0.120 g, 0.185 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2mL) and treated with EDC (0.043 g, 0.222 mmol), HOBT (0.024 g, 0.176 mmol), 3-chlorobenzylamine (0.113 mL, 0.925 mmol) and the pH adjusted to 7.5 with NMM. After stirring overnight at ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated to remove the DMF, the residue partitioned between EtOAc and aq saturated NaHCO₃ solution, the organic layer separated, washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration gave the crude product which was chromatographed on RP HPLC to give the title compound as the TFA salt.
Anal. calcd for C₂₉H₂₇N₆O₃Cl • 2.5 CF₃CO₂H • 1.15 H₂O:
25 C, 48.11; H, 3.78; N, 9.90;
Found: C, 48.10; H, 3.79; N, 9.69.
FAB MS 543 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 11

Preparation of 6-[N-(3-Chlorophenyl) carbamoyl]- 4-ethoxy-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
5 amide

4-Ethoxy-6-carboxyl-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide (0.124 g, 0.191 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2 mL), treated with Bop reagent (0.093 g, 0.210 mmol) and NMM (0.083 mL, 0.764 mmol) and stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between EtOAc and aq saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound after chromatography (CH₂Cl₂ with 1% CH₃OH then 4.5% CH₃OH/0.5% NH₄OH).
10 Anal. calcd for C₂₈H₂₅N₆O₃Cl • 0.70 CF₃CO₂H • 1.15 H₂O:
15 Found: C, 56.09; H, 4.48; N, 13.35;
C, 56.10; H, 4.52; N, 13.31.
20 FAB MS 529 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 12

Preparation of 4-(3-Chlorobenzyloxy)- 6-methoxycarbonyl- pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide
25

Step A: 4-(3-Chlorobenzyloxy)- pyridine-2,6- dicarboxylic acid
Chelidamic acid (10.0 g, 0.055 mol) was dissolved in CH₃OH (300 mL), treated with concd H₂SO₄ (1.8 mL) and heated at 30 reflux for 6 hr, then cooled and concentrated to give an amber oil.

Step B: Dimethyl 4-(3-Chlorobenzyloxy) - pyridine-2,6- dicarboxylate
4-(3-Chlorobenzyloxy)- pyridine-2,6- dicarboxylic acid
35 (2.00 g, 9.47 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (19 mL) and treated with

K₂CO₃ (3.93 g, 28.4 mmol) and 3-chlorobenzylbromide (1.24 mL, 9.47 mmol). After stirring overnight at ambient temperature, the solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between EtOAc and aq saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine and dried (Na₂SO₄). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound.

5 Step C: Mono methyl ester of 4-(3-Chlorobenzylxy)- pyridine-2,6-dicarboxylic acid

10 The dimethyl ester (3.18 g, 9.46 mmol) was dissolved in THF (10 mL) and treated with LiOH (0.4372 g, 10.41 mmol) in H₂O/CH₃OH:1/3 (200 mL) and stirred overnight at ambient temperature. The title compound was obtained after preparative RP HPLC.

15

Step D: 4-(3-Chlorobenzylxy)- 6-methoxycarbonyl- pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide

20 The mono methyl ester of 4-(3-chlorobenzylxy)- pyridine-2,6-dicarboxylic acid (0.236 g, 0.622 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2mL) and treated with EDC (0.125 g, 0.653 mmol), HOBT (0.080 g, 0.59 mmol), 4-cyanobenzylhistamine (0.141 g, 0.622 mmol) and the pH adjusted to 7.5 with NMM. After stirring overnight at ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated to remove the DMF, 25 the residue partitioned between EtOAc and aq saturated NaHCO₃, solution, the organic layer separated, washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration gave the crude product which was chromatographed on RP HPLC to give the title compound which was isolated as the HCl salt.

30 Anal. calcd for C₂₈H₂₄N₅O₄Cl • HCl • 0.55 H₂O:

 C, 58.35; H, 4.56; N, 12.15;

Found: C, 58.33; H, 4.73; N, 11.87.

FAB MS 530 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 13

Preparation of 4-(5-{[6-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

5

Step A: 1-Triphenylmethyl-4-(hydroxymethyl)-imidazole

To a solution of 4-(hydroxymethyl)imidazole hydrochloride (35.0 g, 260 mmol) in 250 mL of dry DMF at room temperature was added triethylamine (90.6 mL, 650 mmol). A white solid precipitated from the solution. Chlorotriphenylmethane (76.1 g, 273 mmol) in 500 mL of DMF was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for 20 hours, poured over ice, filtered, and washed with ice water. The resulting product was slurried with cold dioxane, filtered, and dried in vacuo to provide the titled product as a white solid which was sufficiently pure for use in the next step.

Step B: 1-Triphenylmethyl-4-(acetoxymethyl)-imidazole

Alcohol from Step A (260 mmol, prepared above) was suspended in 500 mL of pyridine. Acetic anhydride (74 mL, 780 mmol) was added dropwise, and the reaction was stirred for 48 hours during which it became homogeneous. The solution was poured into 2 L of EtOAc, washed with water (3 x 1 L), 5% aq. HCl soln. (2 x 1 L), sat. aq. NaHCO₃, and brine, then dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated in vacuo to provide the crude product. The acetate was isolated as a white powder which was sufficiently pure for use in the next reaction.

Step C: 1-(4-Cyanobenzyl)-5-(acetoxymethyl)-imidazole hydrobromide

A solution of the product from Step B (85.8 g, 225 mmol) and α-bromo-p-tolunitrile (50.1 g, 232 mmol) in 500 mL of EtOAc was stirred at 60°C for 20 hours, during which a pale yellow

precipitate formed. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and filtered to provide the solid imidazolium bromide salt. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to a volume 200 mL, reheated at 60°C for two hours, cooled to room temperature, and filtered again.

5 The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to a volume 100 mL, reheated at 60°C for another two hours, cooled to room temperature, and concentrated in vacuo to provide a pale yellow solid. All of the solid material was combined, dissolved in 500 mL of methanol, and warmed to 60°C. After two hours, the solution was reconcentrated

10 in vacuo to provide a white solid which was triturated with hexane to remove soluble materials. Removal of residual solvents in vacuo provided the titled product hydrobromide as a white solid which was used in the next step without further purification.

15 Step D: 1-(4-Cyanobenzyl)-5-(hydroxymethyl)-imidazole

To a solution of the acetate from Step C (50.4 g, 150 mmol) in 1.5 L of 3:1 THF/water at 0°C was added lithium hydroxide monohydrate (18.9 g, 450 mmol). After one hour, the 20 reaction was concentrated in vacuo, diluted with EtOAc (3 L), and washed with water, sat. aq. NaHCO₃ and brine. The solution was then dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated in vacuo to provide the crude product as a pale yellow fluffy solid which was sufficiently pure for use in the next step without further purification.

25 Step E: 1-(4-Cyanobenzyl)-5-imidazolecarboxaldehyde

To a solution of the alcohol from Step D (21.5 g, 101 mmol) in 500 mL of DMSO at room temperature was added 30 triethylamine (56 mL, 402 mmol), then SO₃-pyridine complex (40.5 g, 254 mmol). After 45 minutes, the reaction was poured into 2.5 L of EtOAc, washed with water (4 x 1 L) and brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated in vacuo to provide the aldehyde as a white

powder which was sufficiently pure for use in the next step without further purification.

5 Step F: 2-Amino-6-(3-chlorophenoxy)-pyridine

A mixture of 2-acetylamino-6-bromopyridine (200 mg, 0.93 mmol), 3-chlorophenol (240 mg, 1.86 mmol), CsCO₃ (606 mg, 1.86 mmol), copper (II) triflate benzene complex (10 mg, 0.02 mmol), 1-naphthoic acid (321 mg, 1.86 mmol), ethyl acetate (5 mg, 0.5 mmol), and freshly activated powdered 4-angstrom mol. sieves (250 mg) in 2 mL dry toluene was heated with stirring at 110°C in a sealed tube for 72 hours. The mixture was cooled and filtered through a Celite pad, and the filtrate concentrated in vacuo. The crude oil was redissolved in ethyl acetate and was washed twice with 20% aq. NaOH solution. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄ and was filtered and concentrated to give a yellow oil. The oil was purified by gravity column chromatography over silica gel with 4:1 hexanes/ethyl acetate. Suspected product fractions were combined and concentrated in vacuo to give the product as a yellow oil. The oil was dissolved in 2 mL of 10% aq. sulfuric acid, and the solution heated at 100°C for 18 hours. The reaction was cooled and basified to pH 11 with concentrated NH₄OH solution, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined ethyl acetate extracts were washed with brine, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give the title product as an oil. 400 Mhz H¹ NMR (CDCl₃): 4.44(br s, 2H), 6.15(d, 1H), 6.21(d, 1H), 7.02(d, 1H), 7.11(m, 2H), 7.28(m, 1H), 7.42(t, 1H).

30 Step G: 1-(4-Cyanobenzyl)imidazole-5-[6-(3-chlorophenoxy)pyridin-2-yl]methanamide

A mixture of 1-(4-cyanobenzyl)imidazole-5-carboxaldehyde (79 mg, 0.37 mmol) from Step E, 2-amino-6-(3-chlorophenoxy)-pyridine (81 mg, 0.37 mmol) from Step F, and titanium isopropoxide (131 mg, 0.46 mmol) in 0.50 mL of anhydrous THF was stirred vigorously at room temperature in an argon atmosphere for 1

hour. The reaction was diluted with 0.50 mL of anhydrous ethanol and was treated with sodium cyanoborohydride (23 mg, 0.37 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo, and the residue partitioned between 5 ethyl acetate and water. The aqueous layer was reextracted twice with ethyl acetate, and combined extracts washed with brine and dried over anhydrous MgSO₄. Filtration and concentration provided the product as a yellow oil. The crude product was purified by reverse phase preparatory LC to give the pure desired product as a tacky white 10 amorphous powder after lyophilization from water. 400 Mhz H¹ NMR (CDCl₃): 4.37(s, 2H), 5.31(s, 2H), 6.18(d, 1H), 6.25(d, 1H), 6.94(d, 1H), 7.09(s, 1H), 7.18(d, 2H), 7.19(d, 1H), 7.21(s, 1H), 7.30(m, 1H), 7.42(t, 1H), 7.64(d, 2H), 8.46(s, 1H). High res. FAB MS: theo. = 416.1273, obs. = 416.1286. Elemental analysis for C₂₃H₁₈N₅OCl • 15 0.60 water • 1.15TFA: C(54.47 calc., 54.44 obs.); H (3.68 calc., 3.72 obs.); N(12.56 calc., 1.54 obs.).

EXAMPLE 14

20 Preparation of 4-(5-{[6-(phenylethynyl)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

Step A: 2-Amino-6-(1-phenylethyn-2-yl)pyridine

25 A solution of 2-amino-6-bromopyridine (200 mg, 1.16 mmol), 1-phenylacetylene (142 mg, 1.39 mmol), bis-(triphenylphosphine) palladium (II) chloride (14 mg, 0.02 mmol), and CuI (2 mg, 0.01 mmol) in 2 mL triethylamine was stirred at 60°C in a sealed tube for 18 hours. The reaction was cooled and concentrated in 30 vacuo to a dark oil. The oil was purified by gravity column chromatography over silica gel with 2% methanol/chloroform to give the desired product as a brown oil. 400 Mhz H¹ NMR (CDCl₃): 4.57(br s, 2H), 6.49(d, 1H), 6.93(d, 1H), 7.38(m, 3H), 7.41(t, 1H), 7.58(d, 1H).

35 Step B: 1-(4-Cyanobenzyl)imidazole-5-[6-(1-phenylethyn-2-yl)pyridin-2-yl]methanamine

Via a procedure identical to that described above in
40 Example 13, Step G, from 100 mg (0.47 mmol) of aldehyde (from

Example 13, Step E) and 92 mg (0.47 mmol) of 2-amino-6-(1-phenylethyn-2-yl)pyridine (from Step A) the desired product was obtained as an amorphous tacky light yellow powder. 400 Mhz H¹ NMR (CDCl₃): 4.50(s, 2H), 5.61(s, 2H), 6.71(d, 1H), 6.89(d, 1H), 7.23(d, 2H), 7.38-7.48(complex, 4H), 7.62(d, 2H), 7.65-7.73(complex, 4H), 7.78(t, 1H), 8.58(s, 1H), 10.90(br s, 1H). High res. FAB MS: theo = 390.3713, obs. = 390.1728. Elemental analysis for C₂₅H₁₉N₅ • 1.00 water • 2.5TFA: C(calc. 43.36, obs. 43.63); H(calc. 3.42, obs. 3.61); N(calc. 10.11, obs. 9.85).

10

EXAMPLE 15

Preparation of 4-{[6-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphth-6-yloxy)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

15

Step A: 2-Amino-6-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyoxy-6-yl)pyridine

Via an identical procedure to that described in Example 13, Step F, from 200 mg (0.93 mmol) of 2-acetylaminio-6-bromopyridine and 276 mg (1.86 mmol) of 6-hydroxy-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro)naphthylene was obtained the title compound as an oil. 400 Mhz H¹ NMR (CDCl₃): 1.79(d, 4H), 2.77(d, 4H), 6.56(d, 1H), 6.81(d, 1H), 7.04(d, 1H), 7.65(t, 1H), 7.84(d, 1H), 8.12(s, 1H).

25

Step B: 1-(4-Cyanobenzyl)imidazole-5-[6-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyoxy-6-yl)pyridin-2-yl]methanamine

30

Via a procedure identical to that described in Example 13, Step G from 132 mg (0.62 mmol) of aldehyde (from Example 13, Step E) and 148 mg (0.62 mmol) of 2-amino-6-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyoxy-6-yl)pyridine (from Step A) was obtained the desired product as a clear oil. 400 Mhz H¹ NMR (CDCl₃): 1.81(m, 4H), 2.77(m, 4H), 4.43(s, 2H), 5.53(s, 2H), 6.03(d, 1H), 6.18(m, 1H), 6.85(s, 1H), 7.14(d, 1H), 7.25(d, 2H), 7.46(s, 1H), 7.56(t, 1H), 7.66(d, 2H), 8.61(s, 1H). High res. FAB MS: theo. = 436.2132, obs. = 436.2143.

40

EXAMPLE 16Preparation of 4-(5-{[6-(2-phenylethyl)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

5

A solution of 1-(4-cyanobenzyl)imidazole-5-[6-(1-phenylethyn-2-yl)-2-pyridyl]methanamine • 2.5TFA (85 mg, 0.13 mmol) from Example 14, Step B in 10 mL of absolute EtOH over 10% Pd on C catalyst (20 mg) was hydrogenated for 18 hours at atmospheric pressure (balloon). The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to give an oil. The crude oil was purified via reversed phase preparatory LC to give the desired product as an oil/foam. 400 Mhz H¹ NMR (CDCl₃): 2.98(dd, 2H), 3.02(dd, 2H), 4.38(d, 2H), 5.49(d, 2H), 6.59(d, 2H), 7.16-7.37(complex, 7H), 7.62(complex, 3H), 7.76(t, 1H), 8.52(s, 1H). FAB MS: M+ = 390.

EXAMPLE 17In vitro inhibition of ras farnesyl transferase

20

Assays of farnesyl-protein transferase. Partially purified bovine FPTase and Ras peptides (Ras-CVLS (SEQ.ID.NO.: 11), Ras-CVIM (SEQ.ID.NO.: 1) and Ras-CAIL (SEQ.ID.NO.: 12)) were prepared as described by Schaber *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:14701-14704 (1990), Pompliano, *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 31:3800 (1992) and Gibbs *et al.*, *PNAS* U.S.A. 86:6630-6634 (1989), respectively. Bovine FPTase was assayed in a volume of 100 µl containing 100 mM N-(2-hydroxy ethyl) piperazine-N'-(2-ethane sulfonic acid) (HEPES), pH 7.4, 5 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM dithiothreitol (DTT), 100 nM [³H]-farnesyl diphosphate ([³H]-FPP; 740 CBq/mmol, New England Nuclear), 650 nM Ras-CVLS and 10 µg/ml FPTase at 31°C for 60 min. Reactions were initiated with FPTase and stopped with 1 ml of 1.0 M HCL in ethanol. Precipitates were collected onto filter-mats using a TomTec Mach II cell harvester, washed with 100% ethanol, dried and counted in an LKB β-plate counter. The assay was linear with respect to both substrates, FPTase levels and time; less than 10% of the [³H]-FPP was utilized during the reaction period. Purified compounds were dissolved in

100% dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and were diluted 20-fold into the assay. Percentage inhibition is measured by the amount of incorporation of radioactivity in the presence of the test compound when compared to the amount of incorporation in the absence of the test
5 compound.

Human FPTase was prepared as described by Omer *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 32:5167-5176 (1993). Human FPTase activity was assayed as described above with the exception that 0.1% (w/v) polyethylene glycol 20,000, 10 µM ZnCl₂ and 100 nM Ras-CVIM were
10 added to the reaction mixture. Reactions were performed for 30 min., stopped with 100 µl of 30% (v/v) trichloroacetic acid (TCA) in ethanol and processed as described above for the bovine enzyme.

The compounds of the instant invention described in the above Examples 1-16 were tested for inhibitory activity against human
15 FPTase by the assay described above and were found to have IC₅₀ of <50 µM.

EXAMPLE 18

20 *In vivo ras farnesylation assay*

The cell line used in this assay is a v-ras line derived from either Rat1 or NIH3T3 cells, which expressed viral Ha-ras p21. The assay is performed essentially as described in DeClue, J.E. *et al.*, *Cancer Research* 51:712-717, (1991). Cells in 10 cm dishes at 50-75%
25 confluence are treated with the test compound (final concentration of solvent, methanol or dimethyl sulfoxide, is 0.1%). After 4 hours at 37°C, the cells are labelled in 3 ml methionine-free DMEM supplemented with 10% regular DMEM, 2% fetal bovine serum and 400 mCi[³⁵S]methionine (1000 Ci/mmol). After an additional 20 hours, the
30 cells are lysed in 1 ml lysis buffer (1% NP40/20 mM HEPES, pH 7.5/5 mM MgCl₂/1mM DTT/10 mg/ml aprotinin/2 mg/ml leupeptin/2 mg/ml antipain/0.5 mM PMSF) and the lysates cleared by centrifugation at 100,000 x g for 45 min. Aliquots of lysates containing equal numbers of acid-precipitable counts are brought to 1 ml with IP buffer (lysis

buffer lacking DTT) and immunoprecipitated with the ras-specific monoclonal antibody Y13-259 (Furth, M.E. *et al.*, *J. Virol.* 43:294-304, (1982)). Following a 2 hour antibody incubation at 4°C, 200 ml of a 25% suspension of protein A-Sepharose coated with rabbit anti rat IgG
5 is added for 45 min. The immunoprecipitates are washed four times with IP buffer (20 nM HEPES, pH 7.5/1 mM EDTA/1% Triton X-100/0.5% deoxycholate/0.1%/SDS/0.1 M NaCl) boiled in SDS-PAGE sample buffer and loaded on 13% acrylamide gels. When the dye front reached the bottom, the gel is fixed, soaked in Enlightening, dried and
10 autoradiographed. The intensities of the bands corresponding to farnesylated and nonfarnesylated ras proteins are compared to determine the percent inhibition of farnesyl transfer to protein.

EXAMPLE 19

15

Modified *in vitro* GGTase inhibition assay

The modified geranylgeranyl-protein transferase inhibition assay is carried out at room temperature. A typical reaction contains (in a final volume of 50 µL): [³H]geranylgeranyl diphosphate, biotinylated
20 Ras peptide, 50 mM HEPES, pH 7.5, a modulating anion (for example 10 mM glycerophosphate or 5mM ATP), 5 mM MgCl₂, 10 µM ZnCl₂, 0.1% PEG (15-20,000), 2 mM dithiothreitol, and geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I(GGTase). The GGTase-type I enzyme employed in the assay is prepared as described in U.S. Pat. No.
25 5,470,832, incorporated by reference. The Ras peptide is derived from the K4B-Ras protein and has the following sequence: biotinyl-GKKKKKKSKTKCVIM (single amino acid code) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 13). Reactions are initiated by the addition of GGTase and stopped at timed intervals (typically 15 min) by the addition of 200 µL of a 3 mg/mL
30 suspension of streptavidin SPA beads (Scintillation Proximity Assay beads, Amersham) in 0.2 M sodium phosphate, pH 4, containing 50 mM EDTA, and 0.5% BSA. The quenched reactions are allowed to stand for 2 hours before analysis on a Packard TopCount scintillation counter.

For inhibition studies, assays are run as described above, except inhibitors are prepared as concentrated solutions in 100% dimethyl sulfoxide and then diluted 25-fold into the enzyme assay mixture. IC₅₀ values are determined with Ras peptide near K_M concentrations. Enzyme and nonsaturating substrate conditions for inhibitor IC₅₀ determinations are as follows: 75 pM GGTase-I, 1.6 μM Ras peptide, 100 nM geranylgeranyl diphosphate.

EXAMPLE 20

10

Cell-based *in vitro* growth inhibition assay

To determine the biological consequences of FPTase inhibition, the effect of the compounds of the instant invention on the anchorage-independent growth of Rat1 cells transformed with either a v-ras, v-raf, or v-mos oncogene is tested. Cells transformed by v-Raf and v-Mos maybe included in the analysis to evaluate the specificity of instant compounds for Ras-induced cell transformation.

Rat 1 cells transformed with either v-ras, v-raf, or v-mos are seeded at a density of 1 x 10⁴ cells per plate (35 mm in diameter) in a 0.3% top agarose layer in medium A (Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum) over a bottom agarose layer (0.6%). Both layers contain 0.1% methanol or an appropriate concentration of the instant compound (dissolved in methanol at 1000 times the final concentration used in the assay). The cells are fed twice weekly with 0.5 ml of medium A containing 0.1% methanol or the concentration of the instant compound. Photomicrographs are taken 16 days after the cultures are seeded and comparisons are made.

30

EXAMPLE 21Construction of SEAP reporter plasmid pDSE100

The SEAP reporter plasmid, pDSE100 was constructed by ligating a restriction fragment containing the SEAP coding sequence into the plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI. The SEAP gene is derived from the plasmid pSEAP2-Basic (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA). The plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI was constructed by Deborah Jones (Merck) and contains 5 sequential copies of the 'dyad symmetry response element' cloned upstream of a 'CAT-TATA' sequence derived from the cytomegalovirus immediate early promoter. The plasmid also contains a bovine growth hormone poly-A sequence.

The plasmid, pDSE100 was constructed as follows. A restriction fragment encoding the SEAP coding sequence was cut out of the plasmid pSEAP2-Basic using the restriction enzymes EcoR1 and HpaI. The ends of the linear DNA fragments were filled in with the Klenow fragment of *E. coli* DNA Polymerase I. The 'blunt ended' DNA containing the SEAP gene was isolated by electrophoresing the digest in an agarose gel and cutting out the 1694 base pair fragment. The vector plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI was linearized with the restriction enzyme BglII and the ends filled in with Klenow DNA Polymerase I. The SEAP DNA fragment was blunt end ligated into the pCMV-RE-AKI vector and the ligation products were transformed into DH5-alpha *E. coli* cells (Gibco-BRL). Transformants were screened for the proper insert and then mapped for restriction fragment orientation. Properly oriented recombinant constructs were sequenced across the cloning junctions to verify the correct sequence. The resulting plasmid contains the SEAP coding sequence downstream of the DSE and CAT-TATA promoter elements and upstream of the BGH poly-A sequence.

30

Cloning of a Myristylated viral-H-ras expression plasmid

A DNA fragment containing viral-H-ras can be PCRed from plasmid "H-1" (Ellis R. et al. J. Virol. 36, 408, 1980) using the following oligos.

Sense strand:

5'TCTCCTCGAGGCCACCATGGGAGTAGCAAGAGCAAGCCTAA
GGACCCCAGCCAGCGCCGGATGACAGAATACAAGCTTGTGGTG
5 G 3'. (SEQ.ID.NO.: 14)

Antisense:

5'CACATCTAGATCAGGACAGCACAGACTTCAGC 3'.

(SEQ.ID.NO.: 15)

10 A sequence encoding the first 15 aminoacids of the v-src gene, containing a myristylation site, is incorporated into the sense strand oligo. The sense strand oligo also optimizes the 'Kozak' translation initiation sequence immediately 5' to the ATG start site. To prevent
15 prenylation at the viral-ras C-terminus, cysteine 186 would be mutated to a serine by substituting a G residue for a C residue in the C-terminal antisense oligo. The PCR primer oligos introduce an XhoI site at the 5' end and a XbaI site at the 3'end. The XhoI-XbaI fragment can be ligated into the mammalian expression plasmid pCI (Promega) cut with XhoI and XbaI. This results in a plasmid in which the recombinant myr-
20 viral-H-ras gene is constitutively transcribed from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

25 Cloning of a viral-H-ras-CVLL expression plasmid

A viral-H-ras clone with a C-terminal sequence encoding the amino acids CVLL can be cloned from the plasmid "H-1" (Ellis R. et al. J. Virol. 36, 408, 1980) by PCR using the following oligos.

30

Sense strand:

5'TCTCCTCGAGGCCACCATGACAGAATACAAGCTTGTGGTG-
3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 16)

Antisense strand:

5'CACTCTAGACTGGTGTCAAGCAGCACACACTTGCAGC-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 17)

- 5 The sense strand oligo optimizes the 'Kozak' sequence and adds an XhoI site. The antisense strand mutates serine 189 to leucine and adds an XbaI site. The PCR fragment can be trimmed with XhoI and XbaI and ligated into the XhoI-XbaI cut vector pCI (Promega). This results in a plasmid in which the mutated viral-H-ras-CVLL gene is constitutively transcribed from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.
- 10

Cloning of c-H-ras-Leu61 expression plasmid

- 15 The human c-H-ras gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

Sense strand:

5'-GAGAGAATTGCCACCATGACGGAATATAAGCTGGTGG-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 18)

- 20
- Antisense strand:
- 5'-GAGAGTCGACCGTCAGGAGAGCACACACTTGC-3'

(SEQ.ID.NO.: 19)

- 25 The primers will amplify a c-H-ras encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, an EcoRI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I stite at the C-terminal end. After trimming the ends of the PCR product with EcoRI and Sal I, the c-H-ras fragment can be ligated into an EcoRI -Sal I cut
- 30 mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of glutamine-61 to a leucine can be accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and the following oligonucleotide:

5'-CCGCCGGCCTGGAGGAGTACAG-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 20)

- After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-H-ras-Leu61 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector, using EcoRI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI (Promega) which has been digested with EcoRI and Sal I. The new recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-H-ras-Leu61 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.
- 5

Cloning of a c-N-ras-Val-12 expression plasmid

10

The human c-N-ras gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

Sense strand:

- 15 5'-GAGAGAATTGCCACCATGACTGAGTACAAACTGGTGG-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 21)

Antisense strand:

- 20 5'-GAGAGTCGACTTGTACATCACCACACATGGC-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 22)

The primers will amplify a c-N-ras encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, an EcoRI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I stite at the C-terminal end.

- 25 After trimming the ends of the PCR product with EcoRI and Sal I, the c-N-ras fragment can be ligated into an EcoRI -Sal I cut mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of glycine-12 to a valine can be accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and the following oligonucleotide:

30

5'-GTTGGAGCAGTTGGTGTGGG-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 23)

After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-N-ras-Val-12 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector,

using EcoRI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI (Promega) which has been digested with EcoRI and Sal I. The new recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-N-ras-Val-12 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

5

Cloning of a c-K-ras-Val-12 expression plasmid

The human c-K-ras gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

10

Sense strand:

5'-GAGAGGTACCGCCACCATGACTGAATATAAACTTGTGG-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 24)

15

Antisense strand:

5'-CTCTGTCGACGTATTACATAATTACACACACTTGTC-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 25)

20

The primers will amplify a c-K-ras encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, a KpnI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I site at the C-terminal end. After trimming the ends of the PCR product with Kpn I and Sal I, the c-K-ras fragment can be ligated into a KpnI -Sal I cut mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of cysteine-12 to a valine can be accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and the following oligonucleotide:

25

5'-GTAGTTGGAGCTGTTGGCGTAGGC-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 26)

30

After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-K-ras-Val-12 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector, using KpnI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI (Promega) which has been digested with KpnI and Sal I. The new

recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-K-ras-Val-12 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

SEAP assay

- 5 Human C33A cells (human epithelial carcinoma - ATTC collection) are seeded in 10cm tissue culture plates in DMEM + 10% fetal calf serum + 1X Pen/Strep + 1X glutamine + 1X NEAA. Cells are grown at 37°C in a 5% CO₂ atmosphere until they reach 50 -80% of confluence.
- 10 The transient transfection is performed by the CaPO₄ method (Sambrook et al., 1989). Thus, expression plasmids for H-ras, N-ras, K-ras, Myr-ras or H-ras-CVLL are co-precipitated with the DSE-SEAP reporter construct. For 10cm plates 600µl of CaCl₂-DNA solution is added dropwise while vortexing to 600µl of 2X HBS buffer
- 15 to give 1.2ml of precipitate solution (see recipes below). This is allowed to sit at room temperature for 20 to 30 minutes. While the precipitate is forming, the media on the C33A cells is replaced with DMEM (minus phenol red; Gibco cat. # 31053-028)+ 0.5% charcoal stripped calf serum + 1X (Pen/Strep, Glutamine and nonessential aminoacids).
- 20 The CaPO₄-DNA precipitate is added dropwise to the cells and the plate rocked gently to distribute. DNA uptake is allowed to proceed for 5-6 hrs at 37°C under a 5% CO₂ atmosphere.

Following the DNA incubation period, the cells are washed with PBS and trypsinized with 1ml of 0.05% trypsin. The 1 ml of trypsinized cells is diluted into 10ml of phenol red free DMEM + 0.2% charcoal stripped calf serum + 1X (Pen/Strep, Glutamine and NEAA). Transfected cells are plated in a 96 well microtiter plate (100µl/well) to which drug, diluted in media, has already been added in a volume of 100µl. The final volume per well is 200µl with each drug concentration repeated in triplicate over a range of half-log steps.

Incubation of cells and drugs is for 36 hrs at 37° under CO₂. At the end of the incubation period, cells are examined microscopically for evidence of cell distress. Next, 100µl of media containing the secreted alkaline phosphatase is removed from each well

and transferred to a microtube array for heat treatment at 65°C for 1 hr to inactivate endogenous alkaline phosphatases (but not the heat stable secreted phosphatase).

The heat treated media is assayed for alkaline phosphatase
5 by a luminescence assay using the luminescence reagent CSPD®
(Tropix, Bedford, Mass.). A volume of 50 µl media is combinRased with 200 µl of CSPD cocktail and incubated for 60 minutes at room temperature. Luminescence is monitored using an ML2200 microplate luminometer (Dynatech). Luminescence reflects the level of activation
10 of the fos reporter construct stimulated by the transiently expressed protein.

DNA-CaPO₄ precipitate for 10cm. plate of cells

15 Ras expression plasmid (1µg/µl) 10µl
DSE-SEAP Plasmid (1µg/µl) 2µl
Sheared Calf Thymus DNA (1µg/µl) 8µl
2M CaCl₂ 74µl
dH₂O 506µl

20

2X HBS Buffer

280mM NaCl
10mM KCl
25 1.5mM Na₂HPO₄ 2H₂O
12mM dextrose
50mM HEPES
Final pH = 7.05

30 Luminescence Buffer (26ml)

Assay Buffer 20ml
Emerald Reagent™ (Tropix) 2.5ml
100mM homoarginine 2.5ml

CSPD Reagent® (Tropix) 1.0ml

Assay Buffer

- 5 Add 0.05M Na₂CO₃ to 0.05M NaHCO₃ to obtain pH 9.5. Make 1mM in MgCl₂

EXAMPLE 22

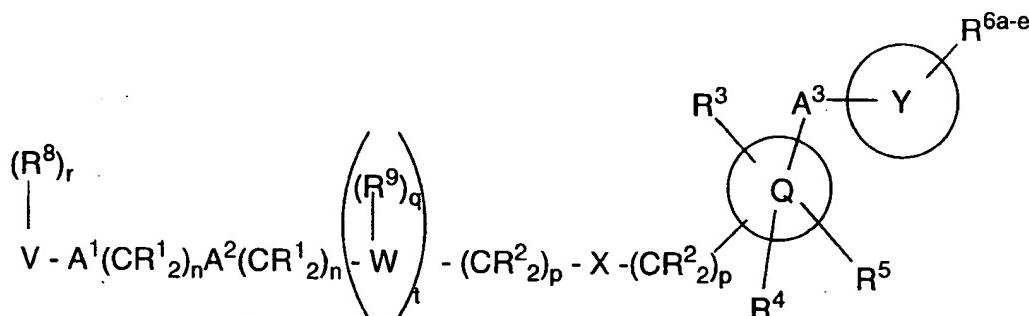
10 In vivo growth inhibition assay

To determine the biological consequences of FPTase inhibition, the effect of the compounds of the instant invention on the anchorage-independent growth of Rat1 cells transformed with either a v-ras, v-raf, or v-mos oncogene is tested. Cells transformed by v-Raf and v-Mos maybe included in the analysis to evaluate the specificity of instant compounds for Ras-induced cell transformation.

Rat 1 cells transformed with either v-ras, v-raf, or v-mos are seeded at a density of 1 x 10⁴ cells per plate (35 mm in diameter) in a 0.3% top agarose layer in medium A (Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum) over a bottom agarose layer (0.6%). Both layers contain 0.1% methanol or an appropriate concentration of the instant compound (dissolved in methanol at 1000 times the final concentration used in the assay). The cells are fed twice weekly with 0.5 ml of medium A containing 0.1% methanol or the concentration of the instant compound. Photomicrographs are taken 16 days after the cultures are seeded and comparisons are made.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of the formula A:



5

A

wherein:

Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine,

15 piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;

Y is a 5, 6 or 7 membered carbocyclic ring wherein from 0 to 20 3 carbon atoms are replaced by a heteroatom selected from N, S and O, and wherein Y is attached to A³ through a carbon atom;

R¹ and R² are independently selected from:

- 25 a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,

C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-,
 R¹¹C(O)O-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂,
 R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
 c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the
 5 substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected
 from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocyclic,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
 R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
 R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
 10 R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
 15 C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-,
 R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹C(O)O-,
 R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂,
 or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
 20 substituent C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
 substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
 R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
 25 R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
 R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

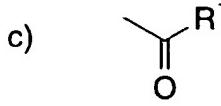
- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
 30 C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-,

$R^{11}S(O)_m$ -, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}$ -, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)$ -, $R^{11}C(O)O$ -,
 $R^{10}_2N-C(NR^{10})$ -, CN, NO₂, $R^{10}C(O)$ -, $(R^{10})_2NS(O)_2$ -,
 $R^{11}S(O)_mNR^{10}$ -, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or $R^{11}OC(O)NR^{10}$ -,

- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- 5 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
 $R^{12}O$ -, $R^{11}S(O)_m$ -, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}$ -, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)$ -,
 $(R^{10})_2NS(O)_2$ -, $R^{11}S(O)_mNR^{10}$ -, $R^{10}_2N-C(NR^{10})$ -,
10 CN, $R^{10}C(O)$ -, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and $R^{11}OC(O)-NR^{10}$; or

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-,
15 -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

R⁷ is selected from: H; C₁-4 alkyl, C₃-6 cycloalkyl, heterocycle, aryl, aroyl, heteroaroyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, unsubstituted or substituted with:

- 20 a) C₁-4 alkoxy,
- b) aryl or heterocycle,
- c) 
- d) $-SO_2R^{11}$,
- e) $N(R^{10})_2$ or
- f) C₁-4 perfluoroalkyl;

25 R⁸ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
30 perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, $R^{10}O$ -, $R^{11}S(O)_m$ -,

R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and

- 5 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, cyanophenyl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NH-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹⁰OC(O)NH-;

10

R⁹ is independently selected from:

15

- a) hydrogen,
b) alkenyl, alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

20

R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

25 R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

30

R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

R¹³ is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, cyano, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl and C₁-C₆ acyl;

5 A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-,
 -C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-,
 -S(O)2N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)2-, or S(O)_m;

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂-, -C≡C-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, S(O)_m,
 -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂NR¹⁰C(O)-,
 10 -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-, -NR¹⁰C(O)CH₂-, -CH₂O-, -CH₂N(R¹⁰)-,
 -CH₂S(O)_m-, -OCH₂-, -N(R¹⁰)CH₂- and -S(O)_mCH₂-;

V is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
 - b) heterocycle,
 - c) aryl,
 - d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
 - e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl,
- 20 provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

W is a heterocycle;

25 X is a bond, -CH=CH-, O, -C(=O)-, -C(O)NR⁷-, -NR⁷C(O)-,
 -C(O)O-, -OC(O)-, -C(O)NR⁷C(O)-, -NR⁷-,
 -S(O)2N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)2- or -S(=O)_m-;

- m is 0, 1 or 2;
- 30 n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 p is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 q is 0, 1, 2 or 3;
 r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen; and

t is 0 or 1;
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. The compound according to Claim 1 having the formula A, wherein:

5

Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, dикатопиперазине, piperidine, piperidinone, dикатопиперидине or triketopiperidine;

10

15 Y is a 5, 6 or 7 membered carbocyclic ring wherein from 0 to 3 carbon atoms are replaced by a heteroatom selected from N, S and O, and wherein Y is attached to A³ through a carbon atom;

20 R¹ and R² are independently selected from:

25

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, R¹¹C(O)O-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

30

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹C(O)O-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹C(O)O-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-; or

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

5 R⁷ is selected from: H; C₁-4 alkyl, C₃-6 cycloalkyl, heterocycle, aryl, aroyl, heteroaroyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, unsubstituted or substituted with:

- a) C₁-4 alkoxy,
 - b) aryl or heterocycle,
 - c)
-

10 d) —SO₂R¹¹
e) N(R¹⁰)₂ or
f) C₁-4 perfluoroalkyl;

R⁸ is independently selected from:

15 a) hydrogen,
b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-,
20 R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, cyanophenyl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NH-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)2-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹⁰OC(O)NH-;

R⁹ is independently selected from:

30 a) hydrogen,

- b) alkenyl, alkynyl, perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
 - 5 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, Br, R¹⁰O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- 10 R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;
- R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;
- 15 R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;
- 20 R¹³ is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, cyano, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl and C₁-C₆ acyl;
- A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, -S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂-, or S(O)_m;
- 25 A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, S(O)_m, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂NR¹⁰C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-, -NR¹⁰C(O)CH₂-, -CH₂O-, -CH₂N(R¹⁰)-, -CH₂S(O)_m-, -OCH₂-, -N(R¹⁰)CH₂- and -S(O)_mCH₂-;
- 30 V is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle,
- c) aryl,
- d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
- e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl,

5 provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

10 W is a heterocycle;

X is a bond, -CH=CH-, O, -C(=O)-, -C(O)NR⁷-, -NR⁷C(O)-, -C(O)O-, -OC(O)-, -C(O)NR⁷C(O)-, -NR⁷-, -S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂- or -S(=O)_m-;

15

m is 0, 1 or 2;

n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

20 r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen; and

t is 0 or 1;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25 3. The compound according to Claim 1 having the formula A, wherein:

Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine,

piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;

Y is selected from: phenyl, cyclohexyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, furyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, tetrahydrofuryl, piperdinyl, thiazolidinyl, piperazinyl and tetrahydrothienyl;

R¹ is independently selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl,
10 R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R² is independently selected from:
15 a) hydrogen,
b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂,
F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the
substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from
unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀
20 cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O- and -N(R¹⁰)₂;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:
25 a) hydrogen,
b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆
alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂,
or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
30 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl;
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,

$R^{12}O_-$, $R^{11}S(O)_m^-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}_-$, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)-$,
 $R^{10}N-C(NR^{10})-$, CN, $R^{10}C(O)-$, N₃, -N(R^{10})₂, and
 $R^{11}OC(O)-NR^{10}_-$;

5 R^{6a} , R^{6b} , R^{6c} , R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, $R^{12}O_-$, $R^{11}S(O)_m^-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}_-$, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)-$, $(R^{10})_2NS(O)_2-$, $R^{11}S(O)_mNR^{10}_-$, $R^{10}N-C(NR^{10})-$, CN, NO₂, $R^{10}C(O)-$, N₃, -N(R^{10})₂, or $R^{11}OC(O)-NR^{10}_-$,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl;
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, $R^{12}O_-$, $R^{11}S(O)_m^-$, $R^{10}C(O)NR^{10}_-$, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)-$, $(R^{10})_2NC(O)-$, $(R^{10})_2NS(O)_2-$, $R^{11}S(O)_mNR^{10}_-$, $R^{10}N-C(NR^{10})-$, CN, $R^{10}C(O)-$, N₃, -N(R^{10})₂, and $R^{11}OC(O)-NR^{10}_-$; or

any two of R^{6a} , R^{6b} , R^{6c} , R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

25 R^7 is selected from: H; C₁-4 alkyl, C₃-6 cycloalkyl, heterocycle, aryl, aroyl, heteroaroyl, arylsulfonyl, heteroarylsulfonyl, unsubstituted or substituted with:

- 30 a) C₁-4 alkoxy,
- b) aryl or heterocycle,



- d) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{11}$
e) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})_2$ or
f) C1-4 perfluoroalkyl;

5 R8 is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C1-C6 alkyl, C2-C6 alkenyl, C2-C6 alkynyl, C1-C6 perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R^{10}O_- , $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{NC}(\text{O})-$, CN, NO₂, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{NR}^{10})-$, $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{NS}(\text{O})_2-$, $\text{R}^{11}\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{NR}^{10}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})_2$, or $\text{R}^{11}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$, and
- c) C1-C6 alkyl substituted by C1-C6 perfluoroalkyl, R^{10}O_- , $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{NR}^{10})-$, $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})_2$, or $\text{R}^{11}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$;

R9 is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) C2-C6 alkenyl, C2-C6 alkynyl, C1-C6 perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R^{10}O_- , $\text{R}^{11}\text{S}(\text{O})_m-$, $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{NC}(\text{O})-$, CN, NO₂, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{NR}^{10})-$, $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})_2$, or $\text{R}^{11}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$, and
- c) C1-C6 alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by C1-C6 perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R^{10}O_- , $\text{R}^{11}\text{S}(\text{O})_m-$, $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{NC}(\text{O})-$, CN, $(\text{R}^{10})_2\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{NR}^{10})-$, $\text{R}^{10}\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})_2$, or $\text{R}^{11}\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{10}-$;

R10 is independently selected from hydrogen, C1-C6 alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

- R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;
- R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl,
5 C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;
- A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-,
10 -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;
- A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, S(O)_m, -C(O)NR¹⁰-,
-NR¹⁰C(O)-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂NR¹⁰C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-,
-NR¹⁰C(O)CH₂-, -CH₂O-, -CH₂N(R¹⁰)-, -CH₂S(O)_m-, -OCH₂-,
15 N(R¹⁰)CH₂- and -S(O)_mCH₂-,
- V is selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
b) heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl,
20 imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thienyl,
c) aryl,
d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are
25 replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl, and
- provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;
- 30 W is a heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, triazolyl or isoquinolinyl;

X is a bond, O, -C(=O)-, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR⁷-, -NR⁷C(O)-, -NR⁷-,
 -S(O)₂N(R¹⁰)-, -N(R¹⁰)S(O)₂- or -S(=O)_m-;

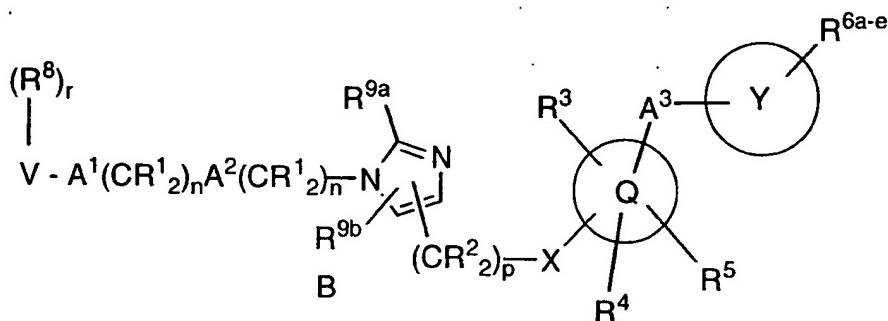
- m is 0, 1 or 2;
 5 n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 p is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 q is 0, 1, 2 or 3;
 r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen; and
 t is 0 or 1;

10

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

4. The compound according to Claim 1 having the formula B:

15



wherein:

- Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine, piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;

Y is selected from: phenyl, cyclohexyl and pyridyl;

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

5 R² is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
- c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O- and -N(R¹⁰)₂;

10 R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

20 25 30 R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,

- C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- 5 c) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-, or
- 10 any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;
- 15 R⁸ is independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
- 20 b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
- 25 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹¹S(O)_mNR¹⁰-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- 30 R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl and halogen;

R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl,
2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

5

R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 10 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;

15 A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -C(O)NR¹⁰CH₂-, -CH₂C(O)NR¹⁰-, -CH₂O-, -OCH₂- or S(O)_m;

V is selected from:

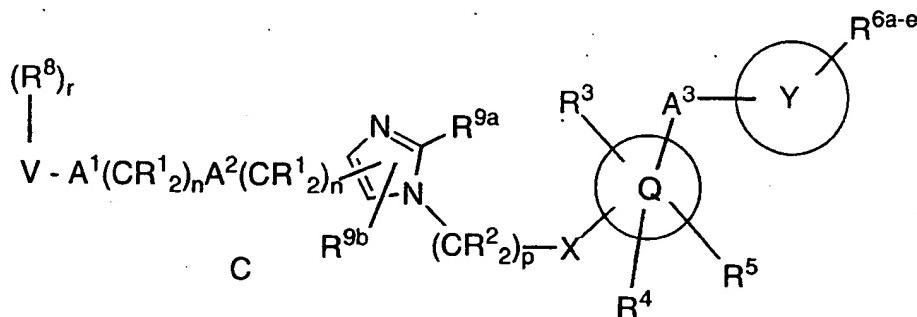
- 20 a) hydrogen,
b) heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thienyl,
25 c) aryl,
d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl, and

provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen
30 if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-;

- m is 0, 1 or 2;
n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
5 r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen;
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10 5. The compound according to Claim 1 having the formula C:



wherein:

- 15 Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring which comprises a nitrogen atom and 0-2 additional nitrogen atoms and having the remaining atoms being carbon atoms, and which also optionally comprises a carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, -C(=NR¹³)- or sulfonyl moiety adjacent to a nitrogen atom, provided that Q is not piperazine, piperazinone, diketopiperazine, piperidine, piperidinone, diketopiperidine or triketopiperidine;
- 20 Y is selected from: phenyl, cyclohexyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, furyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, tetrahydrofuryl, piperdinyl, thiazolidinyl, 25 piperazinyl and tetrahydrothiophenyl;

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R² is independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
 b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
 c) unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from
10 unsubstituted or substituted aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O- and -N(R¹⁰)₂;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, CN(R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
20 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,
25
25 30 R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:
 a) hydrogen,
 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,

- C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹S(O)₂NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- 5 c) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹S(O)₂NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-, or
- 10 any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃;
- 15

R⁸ is independently selected from:

- 20 a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹S(O)₂NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
- 25 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹¹S(O)₂NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NS(O)₂-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

30 R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl and halogen;

R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl,
2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

5

R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

10

A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -C(O)-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;

15 A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;

V is selected from:

20

- a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thienyl,
- c) aryl,
- d) C₁-C₂₀ alkyl wherein from 0 to 4 carbon atoms are replaced with a heteroatom selected from O, S, and N, and
- e) C₂-C₂₀ alkenyl, and

25

provided that V is not hydrogen if A¹ is S(O)_m and V is not hydrogen if A¹ is a bond, n is 0 and A² is S(O)_m;

30

X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-;

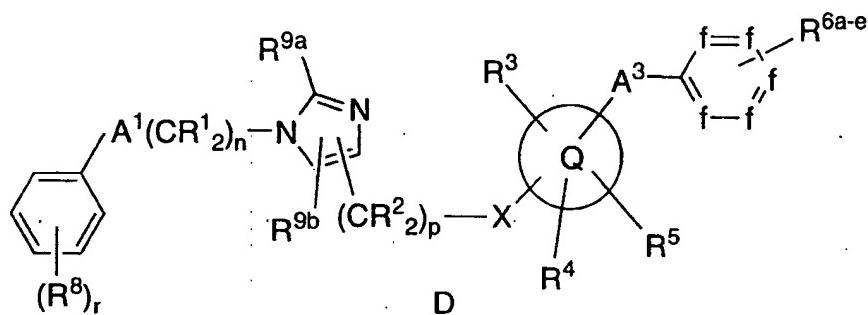
m is 0, 1 or 2;

n is independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4, provided that p is not 0 if X is a bond or O;
 and
 r is 0 to 5, provided that r is 0 when V is hydrogen;

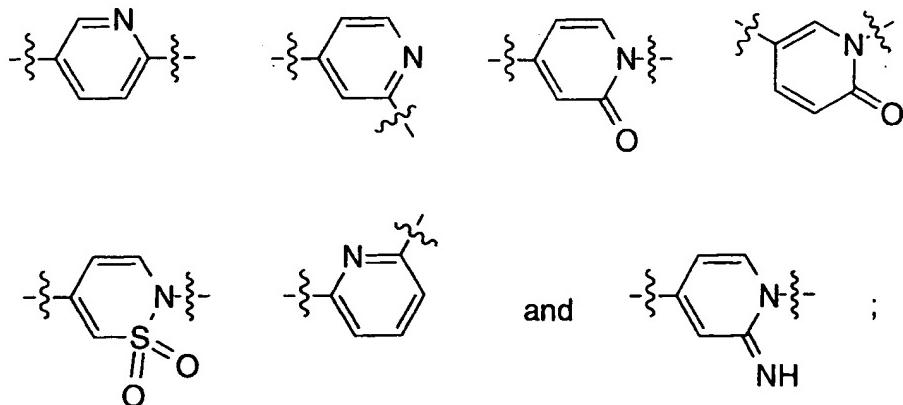
5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

6. The compound according to Claim 4 having the formula D:



10 wherein:

Q is selected from



15 from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are independently CH;

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R² is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
- 5 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;

R³ is selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
- 15 c) R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
- d) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- 20 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,
- 25

R⁴ is selected from H, halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl and CF₃;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 30 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-,-(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

- 15 R⁸ is independently selected from:

20 a) hydrogen,
b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle,
C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆
perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-,
(R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-,
R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
25 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O-,
R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-,
R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-;

R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;

R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl,
30 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

5

A¹ is selected from: a bond, -C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;

10

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;

15

X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-,

15

n is 0 or 1; provided that n is not 0 if A¹ is a bond, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;

m is 0, 1 or 2;

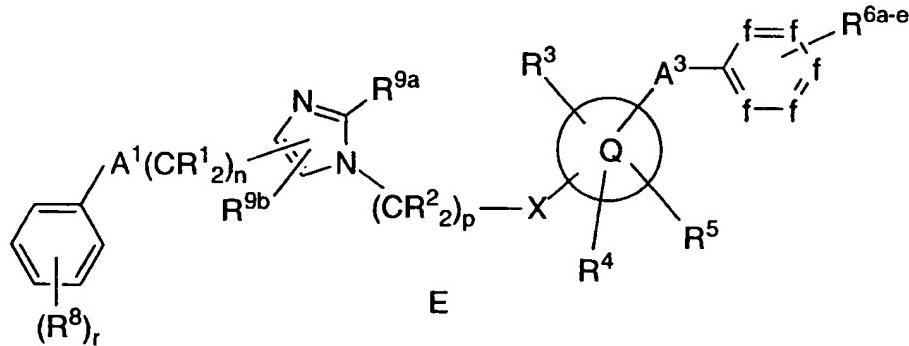
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

r is 0, 1 or 2;

20

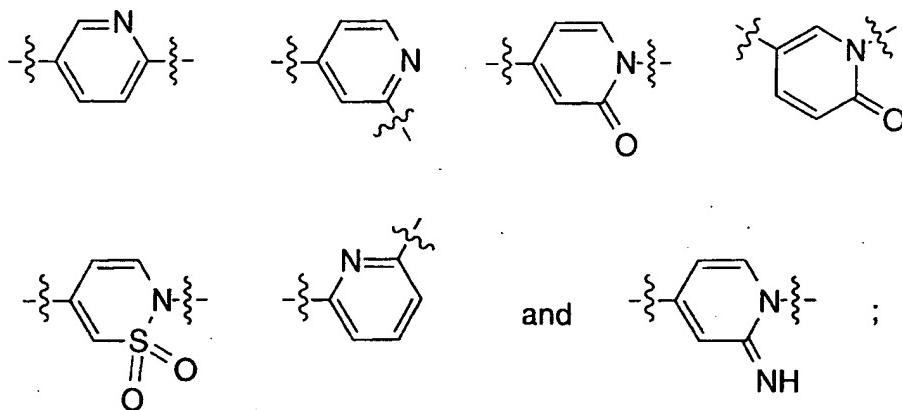
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

7. The compound according to Claim 5 having the formula E:



25 wherein:

Q is selected from



from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are independently CH;

5

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R² is independently selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;

R³ is selected from:

- 20 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,

- 5 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

10 R⁴ is selected from H, halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl and CF₃;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆
alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂,
or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
20 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the
substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or
substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic,
C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl,
R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,
25 R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and
R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-; or

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are
30 combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-,
-CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

R⁸ is independently selected from:

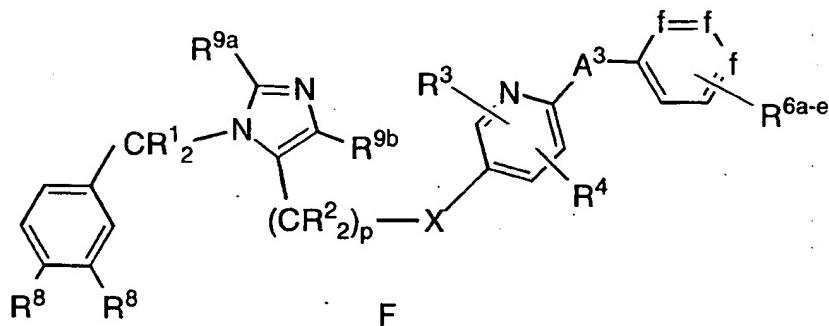
- a) hydrogen,

- b) aryl, substituted aryl, heterocycle, substituted heterocycle, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, CN, NO₂, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-, and
 - c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹⁰O-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, (R¹⁰)₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, R¹⁰C(O)-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,;
- 10 R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;
- R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;
- 15 R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;
- R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;
- 20 A¹ is selected from: a bond, -C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;
- A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;
- X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-;
- 30 n is 0 or 1;
 m is 0, 1 or 2;
 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4, provided that p is not 0 if X is a bond or O; and

r is 0, 1 or 2;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

- 5 8. The compound according to Claim 6 having the formula F:



wherein:

- 10 from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are independently CH;

R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

- 15 R² is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂ or F,
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;

20 R³ is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-,

- 5

 - c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 - d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

10

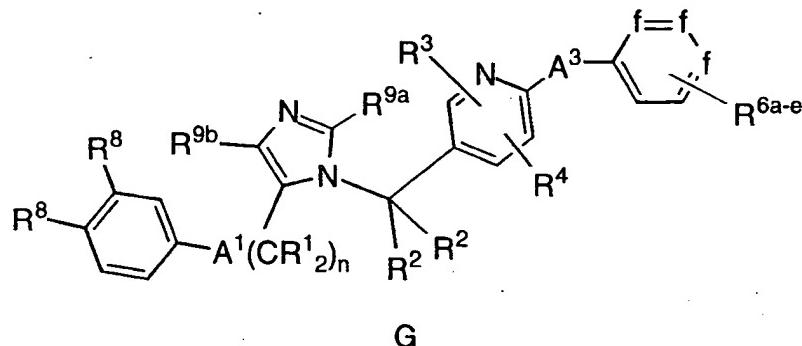
R^4 is selected from H, halogen, CH_3 and CF_3 ;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-, or
20
25
30
any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-;

- R⁸ is independently selected from: -CN, Cl, -NO₂, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, and 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy;
- 5 R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;
- R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;
- 10 R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;
- R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;
- 15 A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;
- 20 X is a bond, -CH=CH-, -C(O)NR¹⁰-, -NR¹⁰C(O)-, -NR¹⁰-, O or -C(=O)-;
- 25 m is 0, 1 or 2; and
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

9. The compound according to Claim 7 having the formula G:



wherein:

- from 0-1 of f(s) are independently N, and the remaining f's are
5 independently CH;
- R¹ is selected from: hydrogen, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R¹⁰O-, -N(R¹⁰)₂, F or C₁-C₆ alkyl;
- 10 R² is independently selected from:
 - a) hydrogen,
 - b) aryl, heterocycle or C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl,
 - c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, R¹⁰O-, or -N(R¹⁰)₂;
- 15 R³ is selected from:
 - a) hydrogen,
 - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
 - c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 - d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or

5 substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-;

R^4 is selected from H, halogen, CH_3 and CF_3 ;

R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} are independently selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen,
 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, halogen, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, NO₂, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, or R¹¹OC(O)NR¹⁰-,
 c) unsubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 d) substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl wherein the substituent on the substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl is selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R¹²O-, R¹¹S(O)_m-, R¹⁰C(O)NR¹⁰-, (R¹⁰)₂NC(O)-, R¹⁰₂N-C(NR¹⁰)-, CN, R¹⁰C(O)-, N₃, -N(R¹⁰)₂, and R¹¹OC(O)-NR¹⁰-,; or
 15
 20

any two of R^{6a}, R^{6b}, R^{6c}, R^{6d} and R^{6e} on adjacent carbon atoms are combined to form a diradical selected from -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH₂-, -(CH₂)₄- and -(CH₂)₃-:

30 R⁸ is independently selected from: -CN, Cl, -NO₂, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, and
2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy:

R^{9a} and R^{9b} are independently hydrogen, ethyl, cyclopropyl or methyl;

R¹⁰ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl,
2,2,2-trifluoroethyl and aryl;

R¹¹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl and aryl;

5

R¹² is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ aralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted aralkyl, C₁-C₆ heteroaralkyl, C₁-C₆ substituted heteroaralkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteraryl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, 10 2-aminoethyl and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl;

A¹ is selected from: a bond, -C(O)-, O, -N(R¹⁰)-, or S(O)_m;

A³ is selected from: -CH₂-, O, -N(R¹⁰)- or S(O)_m;

15

m is 0, 1 or 2; and
n is 0 or 1;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20

10. A compound which inhibits farnesyl-protein transferase which is selected from:

25 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole;

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylphenoxy)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole;

30 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio) pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole;

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(cyclohexylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole;

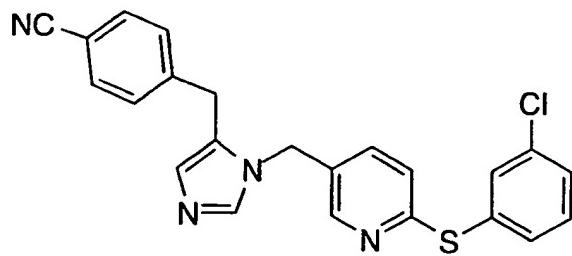
- 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylthio)pyrid-4-ylmethyl])-imidazole;
- 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(cyclohexylamino)pyrid-5-ylmethyl])imidazole;
- 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio)pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole -S-oxide;
- 10 2-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -6-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine;
- 15 3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -6-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)pyridine;
- 20 3-[N-(1-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1H-imidazol-5-ylethyl)carbamoyl] -5-(3-trifluoromethylbenzyloxy)pyridine;
- 25 5-chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide;
- 30 1-(3-Chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-3-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide;
- 35 1-(3-Trifluoromethylbenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide;
- 5-Chloro-1-(3-chlorobenzyl)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridine-5-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide;

- 6-[N-(3-Chlorobenzyl) carbamoyl]- 4-ethoxy-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide;
- 5 6-[N-(3-Chlorophenyl) carbamoyl]- 4-ethoxy-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide;
- 4-(3-Chlorobenzyl)- 6-methoxycarbonyl- pyridine-2-carboxylic acid {2-[3-(4-cyanobenzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-amide;
- 10 4-(5-{[6-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile;
- 4-(5-{[6-(phenylethynyl)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile;
- 15 4-(5-{[6-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphth-6-yloxy)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile; and
- 20 4-(5-{[6-(2-phenylethyl)-pyridin-2-ylamino]-methyl}-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

25 11. The compound according to Claim 10 which is:

5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-chlorophenylthio) pyrid-5-ylmethyl]-imidazole

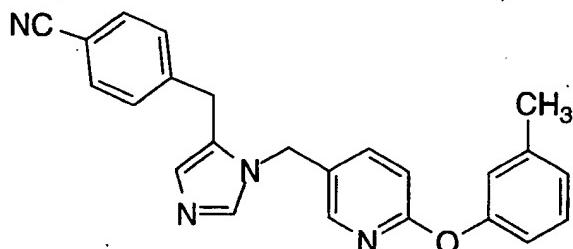
30



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

12. The compound according to Claim 10 which is:

- 5 5-(4'-Cyanobenzyl)-1-[2-(3''-methylphenylphenoxy) pyrid-5-ylmethyl]imidazole



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

- 10 13. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

- 15 14. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Claim 4.

- 20 15. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Claim 5.

- 25 16. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Claim 10.

17. A method for inhibiting farnesyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 13.

18. A method for inhibiting farnesyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 14.
- 5 19. A method for inhibiting farnesyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 15.
- 10 20. A method for inhibiting farnesyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 16.
- 15 21. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 13.
- 20 22. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 14.
- 25 23. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 15.
- 30 24. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 16.
- 25 25. A method for treating neurofibromin benign proliferative disorder which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 13.

26. A method for treating blindness related to retinal vascularization which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 13.
- 5 27. A method for treating infections from hepatitis delta and related viruses which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 13.
- 10 28. A method for preventing restenosis which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 13.
- 15 29. A method for treating polycystic kidney disease which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 13.
30. A pharmaceutical composition made by combining the compound of Claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
- 20 31. A process for making a pharmaceutical composition comprising combining a compound of Claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Merck & Co., Inc.
deSolms, S. Jane
Lumma, William C.
Shaw, Anthony W.
Sisko, John T.
Tucker, Thomas J.

<120> INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE

<130> 20025Y

<150> 60/060,871
<151> 1997-10-02

<160> 26

<170> FastSEQ for Windows Version 3.0

<210> 1
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 1
Cys Val Ile Met
1

<210> 2
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 2
Cys Val Leu Leu
1

<210> 3
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 3
Cys Val Val Met
1

<210> 4
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 4
Cys Ile Ile Met
1

<210> 5
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 5
Cys Leu Leu Leu
1

<210> 6
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 6
Cys Gln Leu Leu
1

<210> 7
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 7
Cys Ser Ile Met
1

<210> 8
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 8
Cys Ala Ile Met
1

<210> 9
<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 9

Cys Lys Val Leu

1

<210> 10

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 10

Cys Leu Ile Met

1

<210> 11

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 11

Cys Val Leu Ser

1

<210> 12

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 12

Cys Ala Ile Leu

1

<210> 13

<211> 15

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 13

Gly Lys Lys Lys Lys Lys Lys Ser Lys Thr Lys Cys Val Ile Met

1

5

10

15

<210> 14

<211> 86

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 14
tctcctcgag gccaccatgg ggagtagcaa gagcaaggct aaggaccca gccagcgccg 60
gatgacagaa tacaagctt ggttgg 86

<210> 15
<211> 33
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 15
cacatctaga tcaggacagc acagacttgc agc 33

<210> 16
<211> 41
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 16
tctcctcgag gccaccatga cagaatacaa gcttgtgg 41

<210> 17
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 17
cactctagac tgggtcaga gcagcacaca cttgcagc 38

<210> 18
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 18
gagagaattc gccaccatga cgaaatataa gctggtgg 38

<210> 19
<211> 33
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 19
gagagtgcac gcgtcaggag agcacacact tgc 33

<210> 20
<211> 22
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 20
ccggccggcct ggaggaggtac ag 22

<210> 21
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 21
gagagaattc gccaccatga ctgagtacaa actgggtgg 38

<210> 22
<211> 32
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 22
gagagtcgac ttgttacatc accacacatg gc 32

<210> 23
<211> 21
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 23
tttggagcag ttgggtttgg g 21

<210> 24
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 24
gagaggtacc gccaccatga ctgaatataa acttgtgg 38

<210> 25
<211> 36
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 25
ctctgtcgac gtatttacat aattacacac tttgttc 36

<210> 26
<211> 24
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 26
gtagttggag ctgttggcgt aggc

24

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/20525

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) :Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL :Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 514/333, 334, 341; 544/3, 298, 333; 546/256, 257, 261, 262, 271.7, 272.7, 273.4

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

CAS ONLINE

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 111, No. 21, 20 November 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 742, column 1, the abstract No. 194444b, SHIMOMURA, O. et al. 'Semi-synthetic aequorins with improved sensitivity to calcium ions.' Biochem J. 1989, 261(3), 913-20 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol.109, No. 15, 10 October 1988 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 106, column 2, the abstract No. 122899q, PATEL, A. et al. ' ¹²⁵ I-BW-A844U, an antagonist radioligand with high affinity and selectivity for adenosine A ₁ receptors, and ¹²⁵ I-azido-BW-A844U, a photoaffinity label.' Mol. Pharmacol., 1988, 33(6), 585-91 (Eng).	1-2



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.



See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	"T"	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
A document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"X"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
E earlier document published on or after the international filing date	"Y"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
L document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"&"	document member of the same patent family
O document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search

22 DECEMBER 1998

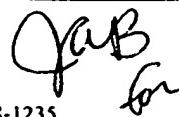
Date of mailing of the international search report

18 FEB 1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Authorized officer

MUKUND J. SHAH



Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Telephone No. (703) 308-1235

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/20525

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 109, No. 13, 26 September 1988 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 618, column 1, the abstract No. 110370x, TIKDARI, A. M. et al. 'Reactions of some 1,3-diamino nucleophiles with azlactones.' J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1, 1988, (7), 1659-62 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 109, No. 10, 05 September 1988 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 101, column 2, the abstract No. 79568s, BETTINETTI, G. et al. 'Interaction between trimethoprim and some sulfa drugs.' Drug Dev. Ind. Pharm., 1988, 14(4), 431-49 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 110, No. 9, 27 February 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 652, column 1, the abstract No. 75494n, ROBINS, A.H., Co., Inc. 'Preparation of imidazopyridines as central nervous system agents.' JP 62,292,782 [87,292,782] 19 December 1987.	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 110, No. 11, 13 March 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 740, column 2, the abstract No. 95589a, HOLGRABE, U. et al. 'Cerium (IV) sulfate oxidations of β-aminoketones. Part V. Synthesis of various substituted 5-oxy-2,6-methano-2 benzazocines.' Arch. Pharm. (Weinheim, Ger.) 1988, 321(12), 917-20 (Ger).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 110, No. 13, 27 March 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 688, column 1, the abstract No. 114776c, WERMUTH, C.G. et al. '3-aminopyridazine derivatives with atypical antidepressant, serotonergic and dopaminergic activities.' J. Med. Chem. 1989, 32(3), 528-37 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 110, No. 13, 27 March 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 742, column 2, the abstract No. 115292d, LEESON, P.D. et al. 'Selective thyromimetics. Cardiac-sparing thyroid hormone analogs containing 3'-arylmethyl substituents.' J. Med. Chem. 1989, 32(2), 320-36 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 110, No. 21, 22 May 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 721, column 1, the abstract No. 192538r, TOLMAN, R.L. et al. 'Preparation of 5-substituted 1-[2-(hydroxymethyl)cycloalkylmethyl]uracils as antiviral agents.' EP 291,230, 17 November 1988.	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 110, No. 23, 05 June 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 748, column 1, the abstract No. 212763r, LANCELOT, J.C. et al. 'Synthesis of 4-methylpyrido[3,2-e]pyrrolo[1,2-a]pyrazines.' Chem. Pharm. Bull. 1988, 36(9), 3248-52 (Fr).	1-3

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/20525

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 110, No. 25, 19 June 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 627, column 2, the abstract No. 231448h, NEZU, Y. et al. 'Preparation of 3-methyl-4-(1H)-pyridinones as agricultural and horticultural fungicides.' EP 304,057, 22 February 1989.	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 111, No. 1, 03 July 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 702, column 1, the abstract No. 7319e, KANDILE, N.G. et al. 'Synthesis of 6-aryl-4-(o-methoxyphenylmethyl)pyridazines and some derivatives.' Acta Chim. Hung. 1988, 125(4), 631-9 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 112, No. 23, 04 June 1990 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 697, column 2, the abstract No. 217449u, KASKAR, B. et al. 'A new synthesis of 2', 3'-dideoxycytidine.' J. Heterocycl. Chem. 1989, 26(6), 1531-3 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 112, No. 13, 26 March 1990 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 286, column 2, the abstract No. 114120a, CHUNG, K. H. 'New 4-hydroxypyridine and 4-hydroxyquinoline derivatives as inhibitors of NADH-ubiquinone reductase in the respiratory chain.' Z. Naturforsch. C. 1989, 44(7-8), 609-16 (Eng).	1-3
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 112, No. 1, 01 January 1990 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 773, column 1, the abstract No. 7857z, ISHITSUKA, H. 'Preparation of fluorocytidine derivatives as antitumors and pharmaceutical compositions containing them.' EP 316,704, 24 May 1989.	1-3, 13, 21
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 111, No. 11, 11 September 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 729, column 1, the abstract No. 97094e, HAMAZAKI, T. et al. '(Phenoxyalkyl)pyridines and analogs as leukotriene antagonists and coronary vasodilators and their preparation.' JP 01 29,363 [89 29,363], 31 January 1989.	1-3, 13
X	Chem. abstr., Vol. 111, No. 9, 28 August 1989 (Columbus, OH, USA) page 727, column 2, the abstract No. 77745q, JACOBSON, K.A. et al. 'Sulfur-containing 1,3-dialkylxanthine derivatives as selective antagonists at A ₁ -adenosine receptors.' J. Med. Chem. 1989, 32(8), 1873-9 (Eng).	1-2, 13
Y	US 5,627,202 A (DESOLMS) 06 May 1997, see columns 3-4, formulae III and IV.	1-5, 13-15, 17-19, 21-23, 25-31
Y	US 5,652,257 A (ANTHONY et al) 29 July 1997, see columns 3-4, formulae I-IV.	1-5, 13-15, 17-19, 21-23, 25-31
A	US 5,585,359 A (BRESLIN et al) 17 December 1996, see the entire patent.	1-31

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/20525

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	US 5,624,936 A (DESOLMS) 29 April 1997, see the entire patent.	1-31

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/20525

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

IPC (6): C07D 401/02, 401/04, 401/06, 401/12, 401/14; A61K 31/415, 31/44, 31/445

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

US CL : 514/333, 334, 341; 544/3, 298, 333; 546/256, 257, 261, 262, 271.7, 272.7, 273.4

BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be searched, the appropriate additional search fees must be paid.

Group I, claim(s) 1-5 (in part), 6-12, 13-15 (in part), 16, 17-19 (in part), 20, 21-23 (in part), 24 and 25-31 (in part), drawn to compounds wherein Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 nitrogen atom in the ring, corresponding composition and method of use.

Group II, claim(s) 1-5, 13-15, 17-19, 21-23 and 25-31 (all in part), drawn to compounds wherein Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring having 2 nitrogen atoms, corresponding composition and method of use.

Group III, claim(s) 1-5, 13-15, 17-19, 21-23 and 25-31 (all in part), drawn to compounds wherein Q is a 6-membered heterocyclic ring having 3 nitrogen atoms, corresponding composition and method of use.

The inventions listed as Groups I-III do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: Compounds, corresponding composition and methods of use of the same scope are considered to form a single inventive concept as required by PCT Rule 13.1, 37 CFR 1.475(d). The groups as outlined above are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept as they are drawn to structurally dissimilar compounds of varying cores and functional moieties which are separately classified, require separate literature searches and are not art recognized equivalents.